

ATTENTION: © Copyright The Vietnam Archive at Texas Tech University. "Fair use" criteria of Section 107 of the Copyright Act of 1976 must be followed. The following materials can be used for educational and other noncommercial purposes without the written permission of the Vietnam Archive at Texas Tech University. These materials are not to be used for resale or commercial purposes without written authorization from the Vietnam Archive at Texas Tech University. All materials cited must be attributed to the Vietnam Archive at Texas Tech University.

**The Vietnam Archive
Oral History Project
Interview with Carmine DelGrosso
Conducted by Kelly Crager
Transcribed by Emilie Meadors
Dates: 18, 19, 25, 26 October; 2, 3 November 2010**

1 Kelly Crager: This is Kelly Crager conducting an oral history interview with
2 Colonel Sean, or Carmine, DelGrosso.

3 Carmine DelGrosso: Put Carmine down, yeah.

4 KC: Carmine, okay. Today is October 18, 2010. I am in Lubbock, Texas, on the
5 campus of Texas Tech University and Colonel DelGrosso is joining me from his home in
6 San Clemente, California. Colonel, to begin this interview, I'd like to get some
7 biographical information if I may. Could you tell me when you were born and where?

8 CD: I was born in New York City on January 14, 1942.

9 KC: And what were your parents' names?

10 CD: My parents were Irish-Italian second generation, and my mother was a
11 housewife, and my dad was a longshoreman.

12 KC: Now did you have any brothers or sisters?

13 CD: Yeah, I have one brother Rob who is five years younger than me and was
14 also a Marine Corps officer wounded in Vietnam. He served in Vietnam throughout
15 1968, '69. In fact, we both served in-country together.

16 KC: Is that right?

17 CD: Yeah, which is really not the policy, but on the home front we told my
18 mother I was in Japan. So, for my Christmas present in 1968 and '69 were ski sweaters.

19 KC: (Laughing) Not something that would have been all that handy in Vietnam.

20 CD: Yeah, but the Marine Corps policy was no two sons in country at the same
21 time.

22 KC: That's very interesting. Well, you said your father was a longshoreman and
23 your mother was a stay-at-home mom. Of course, you had this older brother. Tell me
24 about your family life. Did you grow up there in New York?

1 CD: There's an old saying in the Catholic Church; the Jesuits and the Marine
2 Corps, they were all the same. So, I came from a very Italian-Irish neighborhood,
3 attended Catholic schools, and then went on to Fordham University on a track scholarship
4 and entered the Marine Corps through what's called a PLC, Platoon Leader's Corps
5 program and was commissioned upon graduation in 1963. I had a wonderful, stable,
6 happy child life on the streets of New York and got to see a lot of the world without
7 having to leave town.

8 KC: I'm sure that you did. Going back to this time, you're growing up in the
9 1940s and 1950s. What sort of things do you remember, if any, about larger global
10 events? Things like the Cold War and different developments and events in the Cold
11 War?

12 CD: Ironic, the owner of the Catholic School—I went to the largest Catholic
13 School in the United States with four thousand kids. We went to eight to twelve and
14 twelve to four. There was not much reliance on the sciences. We did not have
15 laboratories and biology and all that sort of supporting equipment. So, the emphasis in
16 Catholic school is on the liberal arts and particular history current events. Even at a
17 young age, in seventh and eighth grade, looking back I thought my awareness of
18 geography, which was a mainstay then, which I regret, is not taught in schools today. I
19 find, in history, and between the legs of geography and history, you've got a pretty good
20 appreciation for political events worldwide. I find in general, today's children, they
21 understand so many events, but they can't put them on the skeletal frame of history. They
22 can't tell you what the event was and the timeframe. My point is, back then I thought I
23 had an awareness. Particularly events in Indochina and the French in the 1950s, all when
24 I was just in the seventh and eighth grade.

25 KC: Right, well, tell me about some of those things that you remember. Again,
26 the French experience is going to lead into the American experience.

27 CD: Could you say that again?

28 KC: Yes, tell me about some of these things that you remember. Which of these
29 events stand out to you?

30 CD: Of course, I remember the French at Dien Bien Phu and looking at a map and
31 trying to appreciate the strategic consequences of how fair-skinned Europeans were

1 involved in that part of Asia in history and what the significance of all that in Dien Bien
2 Phu. Then, of course, like many children in my generation, in '57 the concept of Sputnik,
3 and that's an eclectic impact on the world and what that meant in the beginning of the
4 Space Race. I also understood World War II and many of the documentaries on TV then
5 was *Victory at Sea*. I understood Eisenhower to be a prominent general officer. So, I
6 thought I had a pretty good, at my age, an appreciation of current events that occurred
7 offshore.

8 KC: How well did you do in school?

9 CD: I was a great student. I was a good student. An A student. I had partial
10 scholarships for scholastics and academics in high school. I went to Fordham University
11 on a track scholarship. I was on the dean's list two years until I left.

12 KC: When did you enter Fordham?

13 CD: I entered Fordham in the Fall of 1959.

14 KC: The fall of 1959. All right, here you are, a young man who has done very
15 well in school up to this point with a Catholic school education. You seem to be—I don't
16 want to say worldly at this point, but certainly aware of things that were going on in the
17 world and the cultural influences growing up in New York as you said, were prominent.
18 What did you want to do as a young man entering Fordham University?

19 CD: Well, Fordham is well known not only for Vince Lombardi and Frankie
20 Frisch and so on, but as a good pre-law school. It's a Jesuit institution. I knew, at that
21 time, with my family upbringing in the streets of New York and with an immigrant
22 background, I owed a debt of thoughts to the country. So, the first thing to do when I was
23 figuring out whether I wanted to grow up and be a lawyer or not. Was to do what I
24 perceived to be right in service to the country. By far and away for me, the Marines, I
25 dealt with the most challenging, the best institution. I could prove myself further just like
26 on the athletic field with some time in the Marines. I was off on a regular commission
27 upon completion of the PLC program, but I turned it down. I said, "Listen, I can't spend
28 four years in the Marines. Three years is enough until I go through it. At the end of the
29 three years, then I'll see if I want to stay or not." So, I chose the Marines. There was a lot
30 in my neighborhood, too. There's a good population of generational US Marines in New

1 York City area. Many of my friends from college also had signed up for the Marine
2 Officer Candidate Program.

3 KC: What was Fordham University like when you entered it?

4 CD: What was Fordham University like? It was a Jesuit Institution, so it was
5 steeped in liberal arts. I chose liberal arts. In fact, the first day of Greek—you had a
6 choice, math or Greek—the professor in Greek said, “Well, we all know why you’re
7 here.” We looked at each other puzzled and the answer was, he said, “You’re all refugees
8 from the math.” So, I had a good liberal arts education steeped in Greek and free
9 additionally is Latin beyond what I had at the high school level. I got a good grounding in
10 political science as a BA with the idea that being grounding to go forward towards law
11 school.

12 KC: Okay, now again, as a young man at a Catholic school in 1960, I would
13 assume that you were quite aware of the election of John Kennedy. What was your
14 opinion of Kennedy? What did he mean to you?

15 CD: Back then, in the grand picture, my family grew up blue collar Democrat.
16 But the nature of American politics was changing dramatically so I had an appreciation
17 for Kennedy, but I don’t think I was swept up in all that Camelot politics, but rather, after
18 a year and while he was handed from Eisenhower, I realized that the United States was in
19 a worldwide confrontation with the Soviet Union in many dimensions. Particularly in
20 Africa. I abide Kennedy. I thought that if he had lived, he would have been politically
21 judged as a failure. The concept of martyrs in American politics goes back a long way.

22 KC: Sure, sure.

23 CD: I thought his tenure as president was not very successful, both domestically
24 and to a degree internationally, but unregretably the man perished so I had so many
25 mixed emotions. And like most Americans, I can remember exactly where it was when it
26 was announced that he passed away.

27 KC: And where was that?

28 CD: I was on the drill field at Quantico undergoing six months of The Basic
29 School where all Marine officers, regardless of their military occupation specialty
30 (MOS), spent six months. Even pilots back then before you were assigned to Fleet
31 Marine Forces.

1 KC: All right, tell me about the things that you would do at Fordham that was not
2 academically related? What was your life like at Fordham outside of school? What sort of
3 things were you involved in?

4 CD: My life was basically a college boy that all of a sudden walked out of New
5 York and crossed into the Mason-Dixon Line and at Quantico, although it's thirty miles
6 from Washington, D.C., I thought I was in the Deep South. I had the same aspirations to
7 get an education, to serve the country, and chase a few skirts.

8 KC: In no particular order, I would assume.

9 CD: In no particular order.

10 KC: All right, now you finished Fordham in 1963. So, you were there for things
11 such as the Bay of Pigs crisis, Missile Crisis. You mentioned early that—

12 CD: Well, there's a little funny thing now. The Bay of Pigs, yeah, I was
13 politically aware of it at the collegiate level, but then all of a sudden when I was at
14 Quantico, and I was at Quantico from September of '63 through March of '64. Many of
15 my classmates there were the Cubans who were traded for tractors.

16 KC: Really?

17 CD: You see, after the Bay of Pigs when they were released in late '61, '62,
18 probably two hundred of those Cuban officers were put into the US Army, they were
19 given a choice. Some went in the Air Force. The American government, because they
20 were politically sensitive, didn't know what to do with these people. Some of them, I can
21 remember, had three in my company who were from the Bay of Pigs had spent almost a
22 year in the US Army and gone to US Army OCS (Officer Candidate School) and then
23 said, "Well, let's go work with the Marines for a while." So, they were in my basic class.
24 So that meant nightly I could get their view of what happened at the Bay of Pigs.

25 KC: And what was their view?

26 CD: They were second lieutenants in the Marine Corps.

27 KC: What was their view? What sort of things did they tell you about that?

28 CD: Well, first of all a lot of them had spent time in prison while awaiting release,
29 to my recollection. They were very tough people. They didn't moan or complain about
30 their time in prison. A lot of them were tortured, but they were very motivated. They did
31 see someday a free Cuba, and they sincerely believed that the United States government,

1 at an undetermined time in the future, would again use their talents and newly gained
2 expertise to again try to recapture Cuba.

3 KC: All right, now you finish in '63 and you had already chosen the Marine
4 Corps. You talked about the influences of the neighborhood, the people that you knew,
5 your friends. You're going into the Marine Corps proper. You're going to be
6 commissioned as a second lieutenant. What did you really know about the Marine Corps?
7 Were you steeped in its history prior to entering?

8 CD: I knew I felt that I was on a chosen path. I believe I understood the concept
9 of service. I felt that if you had to do national service, the best vehicle for me was the
10 Marines. I knew not everybody was cut out for it. So, I was very confident in myself that
11 I had made the right choice, in terms of the next step and an unfolding life at the age of
12 twenty.

13 KC: All right, now when you enter the Corps—again, second lieutenant, you go to
14 Basic School. What were your aspirations in the Marine Corps? Did you want to go into
15 law in the Marine Corps? Did you want to get into more traditional line such as infantry
16 or artillery or anything like that? What did you want to do?

17 CD: Well ironically, I brought some baggage from college with me in terms of
18 track and field. It was an Olympic year, and I thought I had an outside shot for the
19 Olympics. Back then, the Olympics was composed of—like a certain event of 800 meters
20 was the three AAU, American Athletic Union champions to three national collegiate
21 champions, and the seventh person in that final would be the inter-service champion. So,
22 I thought I had a very outside shot at 800 meters and I went to Basic School. In the spring
23 of 1964, I was on the track team. So, I got out a number of events to be able to go to
24 Annapolis every day to train. So, I built up. I would have liked to be in the infantry, but
25 to my shock and chagrin when I got out of Basic School, they made me a supply officer.

26 KC: (Laughing)

27 CD: Which I protested vehemently. This was well beyond any scope I had
28 thought, and I had been an honor man in the PLC program, I did well among my peers, so
29 I thought my dream was to go into the infantry. So, I spent June and July, because I did
30 not make the Olympic team, protesting around Quantico and remonstrating to the
31 headquarters that this has been a serious mistake. Fortunately, I won that battle so I was

1 assigned in late June, as an infantry officer. You see, if you had gone to a formal school,
2 you could never change your MOS. The government had invested money in you and that
3 was it. I had not gone through formal school and was able to arrive in July on Okinawa as
4 an infantry officer just suited me fine.

5 KC: Tell me how you were able to protest successfully, this assignment as a
6 supply officer?

7 CD: Well, during my time on a track team, after graduation from basic in March, I
8 had March, April, May on the track team where I was assigned at mainside of Quantico
9 as a sort of an aspiring supply officer awaiting school. I protested vehemently with a New
10 York attitude to those I was reporting to. From captains and majors and they went along
11 with me. I put in a request for transfer to remonstrate this fact that I had been severely
12 misassigned. The monitor, sort of a detail in the Marine Corps, I went to see him for both
13 the infantry and supply. I explained my case to him that I thought this was prejudicial to
14 me and it cancelled. I was not going to go on in the Marine Corps after my initial
15 obligation if I was going to be assigned supply officer. So, I powered him, and I won.
16 One day the infantry monitor called me up during track practice. In June he said one
17 word, "Pack." He said, "You're going to Okinawa in a week." So off I went for two
18 weeks leave, say goodbye to my parents in New York, and headed for Okinawa in mid-
19 June 1964.

20 KC: This must have been pretty exciting times for a young man.

21 CD: Yeah, it was. With two or three lieutenants who I met in Buffalo, New York,
22 we drove across the country. That's the first time I had ever been across my country. I
23 began to appreciate the depth and the diversity and the size of it all.

24 KC: Tell me about that trip. What sort of things stand out to you as you look
25 back?

26 CD: We took Route 66. We picked it up somewhere around Chicago. I kept
27 comparing it to my mind, "Route 66, what happened to the Eisenhower interstate system
28 that I had studied in school? One of his great contributions was the interstate highway." I
29 found out that it wasn't all finished yet. It was pretty rugged back there. I remember
30 stopping in Las Vegas, which was not much given New York's standards. Just wandering
31 around Las Vegas, which was just beginning in 1964, as compared to what it is now. I

1 remember the California beaches. Then I took a plane up to San Francisco and then we
2 traveled to Okinawa on an old military Globemaster. It was somewhere in the
3 neighborhood of twenty-four hours in the air. I arrived on Okinawa about the 1st of July
4 1964. I found out eventually that thirty days before I was competing for the Marines. One
5 of my teammates in the Marine Corps back then was Billy Mills who went on, ironically,
6 that same year, in August, to win the Olympic gold medal in the 5,000 meters and set a
7 world record.

8 KC: Describe for me what your duties were going to be in Okinawa. You're a
9 second lieutenant. What are you going to be doing there?

10 CD: The Marine Corps at that time, had what we called trans-placement
11 battalions. Where a battalion would be formed up, particularly on the west coast of Camp
12 Pendleton. They would train together and they would be locked. All the personnel would
13 be frozen for a fourteen-month period. Then they would train and build up from squad
14 tactics to company tactics to battalion tactics. Of course, six or eight weeks. And then that
15 battalion would usually go by ship to Okinawa. Then on Okinawa on that thirteen month
16 cycle they would train in the Philippines, stop in Hong Kong, maybe even get down as far
17 as Indonesia or Singapore. This was called a float, a thirteen-month float for peace time.
18 That concept still lives in the Marine Corps when we keep three or four reinforcement
19 battalions afloat in what's called the Marine Expeditionary Unit or Marine Amphibious
20 Unit that floats around in the Mediterranean or the Pacific for six months. Now, having
21 said that I was not in a trans-placement battalion because I flew into Okinawa and I was a
22 brand new 0301 which means infantry designation, but not yet fully qualified as an
23 infantry officer. You have to spend ninety days in an infantry battalion and then be
24 certified. I flew in and was assigned to a battalion which had already been formed.
25 Probably with functioning for four or five months as sort of a newbie that was out. By the
26 way, I was the only second lieutenant in that battalion. All the other lieutenants had, by
27 now, moved up to first lieutenant. So, I was assigned to that battalion to gain my ninety-
28 day authorization or verification as a qualified infantry battalion. I was assigned to the 2nd
29 Battalion, 3rd Marines. As soon as I got to that battalion, I was there for ten days. That
30 battalion was sent afloat. So, I did a cruise that encompassed Taiwan, the Philippines, a
31 stop in Hong Kong, and then magically what did we have? We had the Tonkin Gulf

1 incident. So, by late July I find myself afloat in a formed trans-placement battalion, 2/3.
2 Floating off the coast of North Vietnam in the Tonkin Gulf and also occasionally floating
3 down off of Saigon. So, I spent fifty-seven days in a row on the USS *Valley Forge* as a
4 second lieutenant. As part of the Tonkin Gulf build up and responds to the Tonkin Gulf
5 incident. Now, I didn't fully understand the Tonkin Gulf incident, but there were so many
6 ships there I felt that I was in a World War II *Victory at Sea* movie. I would look at the
7 horizon and there would be anywhere from thirty to fifty ships, a massed as a flotilla,
8 which later became known as Yankee Station in the Tonkin Gulf. Well, into almost the
9 end of October 1964.

10 KC: Now, you mentioned you weren't probably quite aware of all the
11 ramifications of the incident at the Tonkin Gulf. What about the American involved
12 there—

13 CD: We knew there had been an attack on the USS *Turner Joy*. Probably by small
14 boats. We were convinced but didn't really know if they were Chinese or if they were
15 Vietnamese. The intel filtering down at my level was basically, I spent most of my time
16 getting my forty-three-man rifle platoon ready and sharp. We would shoot off the fan tail
17 of the *Valley Forge* and tried to stay in, as best we can, physical shape. But the political
18 and the palm that blew to military dimensions, the nature of the attack of the *Turner Joy*,
19 and what that meant, we could only deduce by the amount of ships that we could see on
20 the horizon. That something big was about to happen.

21 KC: Right, how aware were you of other developments and American policies
22 and American actions in Vietnam? Or in Southeast Asia, generally, but in Vietnam in
23 particular?

24 CD: Again, ironically as my paths in life later, led me into Chinese language
25 studies. At one time I was the political military officer at the US embassy in Beijing
26 fifteen years later. I had a pretty good understanding of the emerging threat of China.
27 What an alliance with North Vietnam would mean. I understood the Laotian situation. So,
28 I thought compared to my peers I had a pretty good historical understanding of what was
29 coming to bear and could possibly occur in Southeast Asia and what those ramifications
30 meant. What a possible frontal engagement with China and what that meant in view of
31 our history in the Korean War and how that was a stalemate when that ended in March 5,

1 1953. I mean, that war ended because Stalin died on March 5, 1953. That war was shut
2 down ninety days after Stalin. So, I understood the Russian component of the Korean
3 War. I had studied that quite a bit. So, I realized that the United States, if we didn't tiptoe
4 correctly, could wind up and engage fully with the Chinese of some sort in Asia. Vietnam
5 would have been a likely place.

6 KC: Were you aware of the slow build up in South Vietnam by the United States
7 in terms of the advisors that Kennedy and Johnson had in Vietnam?

8 CD: Was I aware of the buildup?

9 KC: Were you aware of the advisory effort there?

10 CD: I had Marines, even in that brief time in Okinawa, I was meeting junior
11 Marine officers, captains, majors who had just returned from ninety-day periods with the
12 Vietnamese Marine Corps. You wore their uniform, you ate their food, and you were
13 treated with respect. It was called an advisor, but you weren't really an advisor, you were
14 their access to their possible combined fire support of American fire power. Whether it
15 would be air or naval. I knew of that experience, and I thought those were pretty neat
16 young Marine officers that were selected for that. Professionally it was a feather in their
17 cap that underwent that type of experience.

18 KC: Is that something that appealed to you at that early stage?

19 CD: Again, I kept that in my mental file. I said "Gee, if that opportunity would
20 arrive for me. I might avail myself of it."

21 KC: Of course, it would later on, but we're not to that point yet, right.

22 CD: It was not a burning goal for me in 1964. I was just aware of those people.
23 Later, when ashore in 1965, I again ran into Army advisors, Special Forces people, and
24 my own Marine Corps people who were Vietnamese advisors with the Vietnamese
25 Marines. So, I began to understand in a spectrum of warfare what the component was and
26 what you would do as an advisor with the host government. Whether it be Vietnam or
27 Taiwan or elsewhere.

28 KC: Right, at the end of your fifty-seven days, you said that you were traveling up
29 and down the coast there. Once you get the order to stand down, you're not going to land,
30 you're going to be called back. I assume you go back to Okinawa at this point?

1 CD: Yes, when the buildup was completed and there was a stand down in
2 November, I went back and that coincided with my completion of my ninety days as an
3 infantry officer. So now, I had a choice, that battalion was going back to the United
4 States. So, I had to find myself a job on Okinawa with either an infantry battalion or
5 something close to it. I was able to negotiate going from an infantry battalion to a ground
6 reconnaissance battalion, the 3rd Reconnaissance Battalion. Which is the basic elements,
7 do the same thing as the infantry, only in long distance patrolling. So, I was very happy. I
8 felt very fortunate that as an infantry officer. I continued to practice my trade in an
9 operational reconnaissance battalion located at Camp Schwab, Okinawa.

10 KC: How did you wrangle this position?

11 CD: Say again, please.

12 KC: How did you wrangle this? How did you arrange this?

13 CD: The battalion I was with had to make out a fitness report on me and they
14 thought, given that I was the only second lieutenant in the battalion and then had done a
15 satisfactory job while afloat, just two steps short of going to shore, that I deserved to
16 continue. I suspect they thought I was pretty good at my trade. So, they made a few
17 phone calls to over two thirds of the recon battalion. That was my brother's so when I
18 moved—and I didn't even have to leave Camp Schwab, which was the 2nd Battalion, 3rd
19 Marines were stationed. That was also the home of the 3rd Recon Battalion. I was able to
20 walk across the street and continue on in what was a thirteen-month overseas tour for me.
21 So, I got very lucky. I initially went right afloat for the battalion and probably after four
22 months a float, we returned Okinawa into an operational ground reconnaissance battalion.

23 KC: Tell me about 3rd Recon Battalion when you arrived there.

24 CD: I got to do some interesting things with them and ironically, I was chosen, in
25 January, of 1965 to take a ground reconnaissance platoon of twenty-three men to Taiwan
26 and to be matched with a Chinese Marine reconnaissance platoon and operate from the
27 very tip of Taiwan in the south of Taiwan for three weeks working our way north. The
28 concept was each ground reconnaissance platoon had four men. My two junior people
29 worked for my counterparts. My two senior people had two Chinese Marines. So, we had
30 four—no, we had eight, four-man teams. Each with two Chinese and two American
31 Marines with a lot of arm and hand signals. I spoke no Chinese at the time. We learned a

1 few words. We worked our way in the field due north for over a hundred and fifty miles
2 and three weeks in Taiwan trying to document, “Could we work with a Chinese
3 reconnaissance platoon? What were some of the pitfalls? Would our equipment match?
4 Were we physically trained for the terrain and the weather? And living, eating Chinese
5 food in the field and vice versa.” Just seeing what that mix would bring in terms of
6 cooperation. It was very closely watched by authorities on Taiwan and the 3rd Marine
7 Division at Okinawa. So, I got the joy of being able to lead that platoon for three weeks
8 in January. Every now and then I come back and it’s February. In February, everybody’s
9 starting to get the feeling that we’re really going to go to Vietnam. So, the intensity is
10 getting ready to have platoons and companies from the reconnaissance battalion
11 dispatched to Vietnam was pretty well clear in our minds. In fact, the battalion
12 commander had an interesting concept. He was going to take the captains off the staff of
13 the battalion and put them down in letter companies. And take the lieutenants which you
14 could control and make them up at the principal staff offices. So, we had the most
15 experience, officers running the four companies or three companies, rather, and the
16 lieutenants learned close to their first exposure to staff work from a very capable battalion
17 commander.

18 KC: Yeah, that’s really interesting. As I was looking through some of the
19 information that you sent me over the weekend, I saw that you were holding these staff
20 positions still as a lieutenant. I was thinking that’s a little strange. I guess that kind of
21 clears it up.

22 CD: Dr. Cramer, could you say that once again. I missed that completely with this
23 phone that I got here.

24 KC: Sorry.

25 CD: That’s not your fault.

26 KC: I was looking at some of the information you sent me over the weekend, and
27 I noticed you held these staff positions as a lieutenant, and I thought it was kind of
28 strange that you were holding these staff positions at this early stage in your career and
29 that explains why that was.

30 CD: Right, this was the credit to the brilliance of the gentleman’s name
31 Lieutenant Colonel Doc, Doc was his nickname, Blanchet. His concept was to take his

1 talented captains that were on the staff, move them down to the rifle companies to get
2 ready to take the companies wherever we were going to deploy and he'd keep an eye on
3 the lieutenants and teach them something about staff. There was a point there, for a
4 month, that I was the S-3 as a brand-new first lieutenant of a reconnaissance battalion.

5 KC: Huh.

6 CD: Which I had a lot of pride in doing that.

7 KC: Oh, I'm sure, I'm sure.

8 CD: Also, at that time, there were four companies at 3rd Recon Battalion, but one
9 of those companies has always been on Hawaii, it was Company B. And Company B
10 arrived in Okinawa to join up with the battalion which was another sign that something
11 was going to happen. That company was led by First Lieutenant Frank Reisner, who was
12 later killed in July of 1965 and was the first Marine officer to win the Medal of Honor in
13 Vietnam. So, Frank was senior to me. He was a contemporary and Frank brought
14 Company B together and four reconnaissance companies on Okinawa by the beginning of
15 March of 1965. Also, one platoon was a float with 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines off of
16 Vietnam which 3/9 was the first battalion to go ashore in Vietnam about March 7th, I
17 think. If I recall, I'd have to check. Maybe March 5, 1965. That was commanded by
18 Lieutenant Bill Vankat. Then, by that time, Company D had been pegged under the
19 command of Captain Pat Collins, a very distinguished officer to fly into Vietnam to link
20 up with that platoon that Vankat commanded to shore, gathered recon assets around Da
21 Nang, and prepare for the battalion follow on that probably happened three weeks later.
22 The remainder of the battalion came from Okinawa and flying and built around the
23 reconnaissance assets that were already ashore under Captain Collins. At that time,
24 Lieutenant Colonel Blanchet said, "DelGrosso, you're going with Collins." So, I got to
25 fly in, in the initial fly-in wave a week after Vankat had come across the beach in the Da
26 Nang area. So, I was ashore probably late March 1965.

27 KC: Why were you chosen for this position?

28 CD: I'm sorry. Why was I chosen for this position?

29 KC: Yes.

30 CD: I don't know. I had a rapport with Captain Collins. Captain Collins' wife
31 ironically lived in the Bronx in close proximity to my parents. So, I knew of his wife,

1 Mary Collins, and Captain Collins sort of shared kind of a New York rapport and I had a
2 lot of respect for him, and he was looking for people to go with him and I was jumping
3 up and down, "Take me." I asked Doc Blanchet if I could go and he said yes. Again, luck
4 of the draw, that I was selected to go with Captain Collins.

5 KC: Tell me about this, coming ashore, what is your role going to be? What is
6 your mission going to be? Tell me about going ashore in this new effort in Vietnam?

7 CD: My role, initially, was as a platoon commander. Now, again at this time,
8 reconnaissance platoon commander I revert to the idea of enclave theory, the Marines
9 were assigned at Phu Bai, Da Nang, and Chu Lai. I'll tell you an interesting story on Chu
10 Lai, but I was assigned to the Da Nang area to support the 9th Marine Amphibious
11 Brigade. The expedition or brigade, which had landed in late March around the airfield in
12 Da Nang and was beginning to expand west. As a platoon commander at Fort Collins, the
13 9th MAB Commander, General Freddy Karch, a one-star, had concentrated two infantry
14 battalions to protect the airfield and then beginning to probe and move west. One of the
15 instruments he used in that probe was the reconnaissance company that's Captain
16 Collins's Company D, 3rd Recon Battalion, to begin to move west and probe into the hills
17 surrounding Da Nang and find out what was there, make contacts, and basically to
18 expand the perimeter of the air field so we had enough room between the runways and
19 the perimeter not to be able to take incoming mortar rounds or artillery at night. This
20 presented a challenge in the rules of engagement. Could we move forward with loaded
21 weapons? Under what circumstances could we use them? How to treat the locals? What
22 constituted our abilities to distinguish between the Viet Cong and the locals? And a
23 whole list of questions, particularly in terms of firepower because we were operating on
24 somebody else's property. If we were to get into a bit of a scuffle, could we use our own
25 artillery or do we have to coordinate that? Who in the Vietnamese government would be
26 responsible to say, "Yes, you can fire artillery in support of the reconnaissance Marines."
27 How far out are we to go at three thousand, ten thousand meters? If we would engage in a
28 firefight and be wounded, could we use the Marine air ashore to support us? Who did we
29 need permission? So, the whole idea of rules of engagement up and down the chain, we
30 were the initial tests. So, round reconnaissance in four-man, sometimes company size, up
31 to eighty people. Through the months of April and May began to tests concepts. 3rd

1 Reconnaissance Battalion, whole structured the mission was fairly new. The idea was to
2 be able to operate four-man teams, but could four-man teams operate in that climate and
3 that heat? How did they get water? Carry batteries for their radio? Number four, we
4 realized that maybe the magic number for a reconnaissance battalion should be seven-
5 man teams and begin to test with that. We send platoons out, twenty three-man platoons.
6 So, we throw basically west and south of Da Nang. In fact, on April 25th, Collins took our
7 company out and we were patrolling in a platoon sequence. First Platoon, ten minutes
8 later Second Platoon following in the same path west, southwest of Da Nang, about
9 fifteen miles. We got into one hell of a firefight.

10 KC: Is that right?

11 CD: Yes, and that is the first Marine major ground combat with the Viet Cong
12 was Captain Collins and Company D, 3rd Recon Battalion engaged the VC at a place
13 called Binh Thai, B-I-N-H T-H-A-I. We had a hell of a donnybrook. It went for about
14 four hours and had a couple of guys wounded and then the rifle company that had been
15 back on the strip, for just such emergencies, the 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines Sparrowhawk
16 was the concept was flown into support us. Then we got in pursuit of the Vietnamese,
17 Viet Cong, something North Vietnamese and they broke off contact, but it was a long
18 day. That was the first time US Marines had engaged in at least company-level combat
19 with the Vietnamese.

20 KC: Well, let me ask you a few questions here. I think this is incredibly
21 interesting.

22 CD: Can you say that again, please?

23 KC: Let me ask you a few questions here. All right, had you had any sort of
24 training, had anyone talked to you about, had anyone prepared you for what kind of
25 combat that you might encounter? Did they talk about the VC or the NVA (North
26 Vietnam Army) and what kind of tactics to expect? How familiar were you with this
27 potential enemy?

28 CD: A very good question. You learn fast. Now, all through the end of March and
29 the first few weeks in April was about three weeks. In those three weeks, we would be
30 patrolling every day. We started to shed pieces of equipment you didn't need. We came
31 to appreciate to be able to travel light. We had a special dispensation from the

1 commanding general; we didn't use helmets. Helmets you couldn't hear with helmets at
2 night. So, we were allowed to wear soft covers. So, we were lightly armed, we salvaged a
3 whole bunch of plastic bags that could hold water. So, in our packs, we would be
4 carrying water because of the tremendous heat and dust in April around the Da Nang
5 area. We also began to realize when we did get shot occasionally, it might be a local VC
6 or somebody in the village who might have thought we were French. There were a lot of
7 those kinds of reverse psychological things going on, too. In fact, it was about the time
8 when Marines changed the word expeditionary. At that time, it was the 9th Marine
9 Expeditionary Unit that represented all the Marines ashore. That was changed to 9th MAB
10 (Marine Amphibious Brigade) amphibious unit to dispel the idea that we might be
11 somehow the heirs to the French expeditionary heritage, which was floating, we were
12 told, among the local villages. So, as we progressed through April, we knew when we
13 were getting shot at or getting engaged by some local rag tails. We could tell what a VC
14 was. They basically had a mixture of arms, small arms. Different kinds of ammunition.
15 That they kept under the boards in their village hooches. When we took that, on April
16 27th, took on that particular Vietnamese unit, they had heavy weapons, machineguns.
17 Their tactics we found ourselves in a perfect, what's called, L, "Lima," shaped ambush.
18 We were right smack in the middle of it. We knew we were into some first-rate troops.
19 The intensity of the fire, the nature of the fire and their tactics and they had uniforms on,
20 thought we were up against the higher grade of the VC. Which by deduction, we believed
21 were the NVA.

22 KC: Now, you talked about learning these lessons as you were moving through on
23 these patrols. You're dumping equipment. What sort of equipment would you dump and
24 what would you take with you?

25 CD: The first thing you'd dump was your skivvies.

26 KC: Why?

27 CD: Because back in those times, we didn't have the rain-proof utilities. We had
28 just standard old issues that were in the Marine Corps at the end of the Korean War. We
29 were only beginning to hear about new utilities that if it rained on you, they would dry
30 quick to material. So, you would walk, and it was a hundred-degree weather with
31 skivvies. We would get rid of our skivvies. At that time, we began to be issued a new

1 jungle boot that had two holes in the side of each boot that if you would hit water in the
2 water paddy, it would squirt the water out so the shoes would dry faster. We began to
3 understand the nature of the rainforest. As we moved further left from Da Nang, when the
4 rainy season came, you had to take your boots off every day, at least for a period of time.
5 So, you didn't suffer a mild case of, you might say, emersion foot. We got into thinking
6 lighter. All the things that we used to bring to the field, as if were deployed in Korea or
7 even the Philippines, we began to jettison in the name of speed, anything that made noise.
8 Some of these big knives and things these people are pictured with in today's movies that
9 didn't go. We went as light, as dry as we could keep ourselves. We began to use plastic. I
10 asked my mom to send me plastic bags that I would use to keep my maps in. Anything to
11 prevent the rain from getting in. Certain key documents on codes for the radios, we
12 would put those on plastic bags and carried them inside our utility jackets. Again, to
13 make sure they were waterproof against the rain when it happened. So, there was a
14 tendency to move toward lightness. Anything that could get rid of water that could be
15 used and would be waterproof, even ammunition. How we carried our ammunition to
16 waterproof it.

17 KC: What kind of weapons did you carry with you and how much ammunition
18 did you take?

19 CD: Yes, well, at that time there were a number of debates on weapons, what
20 were the ideal weapons. We arrived with the M-14, even reconnaissance troops carry the
21 M-14. The debate was, upon a tradition, you only carry a small arm. When an officer has
22 to use an M-14, you're pretty well in the middle. You have lost control and you're in
23 control. So, it's kind of dashing to be able to just have a pistol. In an infantry unit, where
24 you're surrounded by forty Marines with all that firepower, but in reconnaissance
25 battalion the debate was, wait a minute, should an officer who's got a seven-man team
26 also have a rifle? And if so, what should it be? And does this violate an old precept that
27 officers only carry pistols? The decision in the battalion was, if it was a seven-man team,
28 we would allow the officer, if need be, if we wanted to, depending on the nature of the
29 threat and the distance, it would be from friendly lines, whether to bring a weapon or not.
30 We also, fortunate with Captain Collins, we went down and bartered with the Special
31 Forces for two, 60-millimeter mortars and six hundred rounds. We were able to

1 cumshaw. So, what we did in an eighty-man recon company, is we'd train the first
2 sergeant and his four or five clerks, to operate these two sixty-millimeter mortars. So, in
3 this way, if we went out in company size of eighty men, and the first sergeant went with
4 us, we had our own artillery. We didn't have to wait for coordination of 105 or even air.
5 We could immediately bring firepower to bear or only a lightly armed small
6 reconnaissance company. Things during April and May was a tremendous learning curve
7 that probably didn't stabilize until July on. Because this is the first time in the
8 reconnaissance battalions, which had been an institution on paper since Korea, were
9 beginning to be tested in the field situation. The concept of how far out should
10 reconnaissance go? Well, the books and the doctrinal publications said, "Ten thousand
11 meters from the front line." We didn't have front lines back then. I think we had certain
12 installations like protecting the airfield. So, the rule of thumb became the distance that
13 reconnaissance would be deployed depended on where the artillery fan would be. Now,
14 the 105 would fire up to nine miles so anywhere where we could operate through a radio
15 or a radio relay. Again, that's another subject, too, our radios were not that great. We had
16 the old PRC-10. We would always have to set up relays on some of the high grounds. If
17 you could contact through the PRC-10 artillery, we could operate in a fan up to a depth of
18 eight miles and we could bring in air if we had the proper coordination through the
19 Vietnamese. So, all these things were being learned. The nature of the patrol, the duration
20 of the patrol could be three days, could be seven days. It depended again on the amount
21 of weight you had to carry, the amount of water or if you had water accessible. If you had
22 pills you could put in the water to purify the water. So, there were limiting factors on the
23 degree of how long a patrol could go. But during this whole sixty-day period, we began
24 to push west into the hills. We're talking to four hundred to eight hundred feet high due
25 west of Da Nang and up the Song Thu Bon River into an area called Elephant Valley
26 northwest of Da Nang. Due west of Da Nang there's an old French fort up on the hills
27 called Ba Nha which at one time had been a French garrison, but also a luxury resort to
28 get away from the heat up in the hills. Ba Nha was up, I think about three thousand feet.
29 So, we'd operate out west toward Ba Nha and west toward Happy Valley in four-to eight-
30 man teams. Or sometimes go as a company of eighty people. Most of the time, we'd walk
31 in as a company or we would be flown in as a recon team during an insertion period. We

1 would usually insert teams as it got dark because darkness was your friend. We could get
2 four men in about six or seven o'clock in the evening. If you didn't hear, the VC would
3 use drums to signal that they knew you were in the area. If you landed about six or seven
4 o'clock at night you were pursued by the VC with drums. Hopefully the cover of
5 darkness would allow you to begin at night to go where you had to go. Reconnaissance
6 patrols normally were somewhat passive in nature and just observed that far out and what
7 was going on. That was another debate. If a reconnaissance team saw a major NVA force,
8 even though they're for seven men out on the trail, should they engage with indirect fire
9 or to engage them themselves or to just report that a major enemy target just moved by?
10 With Captain Collins, this notion of you're neatly disguised as a potted palm and you're
11 out on the trail and you see the enemy go by, you just report, "Well, thirty VC just
12 walked by me. About thirty NVA." That was anathema. Our rule was, despite the size of
13 your force, engage them with either indirect fire or if need be, direct fire yourself. Even
14 though reconnaissance is just to surveil, to watch and report, we found ourselves almost a
15 small infantry unit and infantry units cause is to engage and destroy. We found ourselves
16 at that role, almost acting as infantry and engaging often, VC and VC groups lodging in
17 the four- or seven-man team.

18 KC: This is really interesting. Let's go back to weapons for just a moment.
19 You've talked about the M-14 on these reconnaissance patrols, and you also mentioned
20 the M-60. Both of these are large cumbersome weapons in their own way. Did you find
21 them to be adequate for these recon patrols where you have to be swift, you have to be
22 quiet, and you have to be agile? What kind of weapons did you find work the best?

23 CD: What we found worked best, which we found was awfully unique, we were
24 the only company that did it. We had those two 60-millimeter mortars that we had gotten
25 cumshaw from the Army to be able to send the first sergeant and three to four company
26 (unintelligible) out there to use those two, 60-millimeter mortars. That was very
27 reassuring for a small group to have our own self-contained artillery. At the personal
28 level, we found the .45 adequate. We found the M-14 superb. Now, what made the M-14
29 so superb is, if an enemy was behind a tree, if you shot at that tree long enough with that
30 M-14, it will blow the tree away and get him.

31 KC: It would eventually reach him if you kept firing.

1 CD: That's right, you just keep shooting at that tree and he will go away, one way
2 or the other. We found it reliable, worked in water, worked in mud and we managed to
3 keep it clean every evening. It was most reliable. The M-16 came in very late in my tour
4 late in the fall of 1965. Before it arrived, there were horror stories about people trying to
5 keep their M-16 clean, having problems keeping it clean. In the field, the stories went
6 because the bullet tumbles from the M-16 and as it goes, it could deflect. So, if you were
7 firing over grass, it could hit the grass and deflect. So, in terms of accuracy and the
8 reliability that you were accustomed to with the M-14 and hell the VC was behind the
9 tree, keep shooting at the tree and it'd go away. That did not apply with the M-16. It was
10 a very delicate weapon that needed a lot of mothering. Now, if you hit a person in the
11 arm, you could almost consider that person dead because if the bullet tumbled through
12 the air and you hit a person in the arm, it might take off his whole arm. It was bone-
13 shattering ammunition. That was the major advantage, if you hit somebody or dinged
14 them or wounded them, you could probably count that as a kill. So, the base and the
15 transition of a new weapon, people always resent it. There was an aspect of Vietnam,
16 down in the company outhouses, sometimes when you're back at camp, people would
17 scroll on the walls some pretty earthwise philosophy and it was one I never forgot. It said,
18 "Never forget, the M-16 was built by the cheapest bidder." Implying that the weapon
19 itself went to the lowest bidder and that's how much of government equipment is bought
20 and purchased.

21 KC: Not a very reassuring thought.

22 CD: Not a reassuring thought. So again, it's amazing what makes you a believer.
23 Initially having to come ashore armed with the M-14, it proved effective, reliable, and the
24 bullets were bigger and there was a little more weight. Most Marines, even in the
25 reconnaissance business, never balked at the reliability of the M-14. For the M-16, there
26 were stories that didn't happen to recon people. You'd hear these stories from time to
27 time about in the infantry or the US Army having lots of problems on the battlefield with
28 the unreliability of the M-16. I take you're familiar with some of those stories.

29 KC: Sure.

30 CD: At my time and my place—you know, in Vietnam the experiences I was
31 having in the Da Nang area in '65 and early '66 was not the same. It was like five or six

1 little cauldrons as an Army unit that would have been in the delta or up in the highlands
2 and somewhere west of Saigon. It is very difficult to correlate the Army or the Marines
3 unless you can set the timeframe and the locations and then do a comparative analysis.

4 KC: Right, because it's very different depending on where you were and when
5 you were there.

6 CD: In fact, in the old days, when you got back, you'd buy somebody a beer.
7 Then I reached a point in my own experiences of, "Where were you and when?" That
8 dictated the parameters for a free beer or not.

9 KC: That's really interesting to hear that.

10 CD: Right, because you know I hear these stories someone will go, "Ah, I was in
11 Vietnam." "Well, what were you, a box kicker or were you an Army medic or an Army
12 pilot?" It differentiated and there were surgeons. In '68 and '69 they got beers; we were
13 losing two hundred Marines a week. You began to differentiate as the years went on.
14 What was your particular Vietnamese experience and where and under what conditions?

15 KC: All right, let's go back to these patrols again, these recon patrols. You're
16 going out with four-, seven-, eight-man patrols. What did you find to be the most
17 effective size, what did you find to be the proper range? What kind of tactics did you
18 eventually settle on as being the right way to do it? Tell me about going out on a standard
19 patrol.

20 CD: In the Da Nang area—again, this is different than Chu Lai or Phu Bai. What
21 had happened to the battalion, we had sent a company up to Chu Lai who operated and
22 supported the 4th Marines up there—4th Marine Regiment, but Company D, 3rd Recon
23 battalion was sort of the general company in support of the 3rd Marine Division in the
24 greater Da Nang tactical area of responsibility, T-A-O-R. Beyond the TAOR, which was
25 drawn by the commanding general, what he considered his area of interest, we have what
26 is called an R-A-O-R, a reconnaissance area of responsibility. You might say an
27 additional belt of anywhere from a few thousand to ten thousand yards. So, we would do
28 directed patrolling, and we found that seven-man teams were the best. You could send a
29 seven-man team from five to seven days. They would basically—and remember we were
30 sort of drawing the map at that time. We didn't know what was out there. We never got
31 much aerial overview. We were just being issued new sets of maps. Initially we wanted

1 to show it using old French maps. I was very lucky because I had two years of French at
2 Fordham so I could read some of the *Marchand* and some of the other words. As we
3 transitioned to better maps in July, we were getting first rate topographical material that
4 we could operate. We began to look at areas of approach into the Da Nang area that
5 would spin off the Ho Chi Minh Trail in Laos and come down into two big areas, three
6 really. Down Happy Valley was a major area of logistic line of the supply to Da Nang
7 area. Up in northwestern Da Nang at what was called Elephant Valley, it was a river. And
8 then by sea. In fact, one time north of Da Nang there was an Esso refinery of Shell Oil.
9 The very tip of the Bay of Tourane there, there was an island that we believed was the
10 last jumping off place for armed caches coming out of the Da Nang area. So, we even
11 once rented an eighty-man company raid from the sea against that island. So, we did
12 everything from company raids at sea, all the way to initial seven-man patrols. Now, on
13 those seven-man patrols we also believed who should be the leader. Now, a
14 reconnaissance platoon company, a lieutenant, either first or second, and a staff sergeant
15 as a platoon sergeant in four, four-man teams; a radio operator and a corpsman. We
16 would spilt that platoon down the middle. So, the patrols that went out, it would either be
17 the lieutenant, or the staff sergeant would take the patrol. Captain Collins had at his
18 command at least six patrols that could be deployed. Keeping in mind you have to rest
19 the patrol to resupply, reequip, maybe one at the ready, and maybe three or four out in the
20 field at the time. His range of employment with the ability with his eighty-man company
21 at any one time to have at least four, seven-man patrols in operation west of Da Nang.
22 These patrols would need to be combat or non-combat. Most of the ones that went out in
23 combat were looking for VC but to report them. But if engaged, they would fight back
24 and wait for reinforcements to come in and assist. Non-combat might have been point
25 specific targets to go to the top of Ba Nha and find out what was up there. Spend a few
26 days and see if this could turn into anything. So initially we were working in platoon-size
27 patrols all the summer of '65. Then we had a change of battalion commanders in '65, a
28 gentleman named Van Cleave, also a very talented officer. Relieved Doc Blanchet. Now,
29 by August of '65, Frank Reasoner had been killed. We had lost a number of troops in
30 firefights, but we felt comfortable operating in those seven-man patrols. We had worked
31 out all the fire support rules where if you call for fire support, you could get it within

1 three minutes. You did not have to go up and down the Vietnamese hierarchy and
2 sometimes, initially in April, we waited thirty-five minutes for an artillery round. And by
3 then everything was over.

4 KC: And was this because you had to get the approval of the Vietnamese
5 hierarchy, like you say?

6 CD: Right, it had to go up through the 3rd Marine Amphibious Force over to the
7 regional headquarters of the Vietnamese high command for I Corps and then come back
8 across the street and then be fired. It was very elaborate, cumbersome, and a lot of red
9 tape. But that had been worked out by July. So that meant, with a great degree of
10 confidence, these seven-man teams could go forward great distances. Probably out there
11 twelve or thirteen miles. But because they had the artillery fan and by now, we had a few
12 firefights, too, where you could call in Marine air, fixed-wing. Now, for a while there for
13 every fixed wing I remember—I remember particularly one incident where a VMF
14 (Marine fighter squadron), fixed-wing Marine fighter pilot 513, (VMF-513 “Flying
15 Nightmares”) came to support us when we were in a firefight, but he couldn’t shoot. So,
16 what the F-4 would do is stand the aircraft on its end and kick in the after burner. That
17 loud noise and suppression and leaves and everything flying coming real low, would
18 scare the NVA or the VC to create a lull in the battle. To allow us to maneuver to a
19 different direction or whatever. But that was best air power could do then and that was
20 because of its coordination problem. That eventually worked out, too. Then they could
21 begin to drop a varied ordnance of napalm and do the job which they were well known
22 for. And drop very close to us on occasion.

23 KC: You talked about the radio and having to set up radio relays with the PRC-
24 10. What kind of communication system did you have set up before you were
25 comfortable? What sort of technology did you have? How did you have to have a patrol
26 set up in communication before you were satisfied with communications?

27 CD: The PRC-10 did not have any authenticity or the ability to have covered
28 voice communications. That is, it was straight FM, frequency modulated, and that meant
29 the VC could listen. So when you spoke on the radio you had to work out shackle devices
30 where instead of free range codes, you could look at your codes and broadcast in the open
31 knowing that the VC could hear your location, you had to shackle all that or shackle any

1 kind of information that would give somebody who might be listening and had a good
2 understanding of English. Like you couldn't say, "Well, we're near the big blue!"
3 meaning the lake, that would be stupid if they figured it out, but we had no shackling.
4 Well, we had shackling, but we had no covered radio like five years later in the war. We
5 had the PRC-25 where every day you could change the codes, but every day you would
6 be speaking covered. Meaning it was possible to intercept. Back in '65, the PRC-10 was
7 limited. It took large batteries that were often not very—the life expectancy of the battery
8 was not very long. The radio constantly had to be tuned and keyed up to make sure that it
9 was on the right frequency that you were speaking to. It had the limitation of line of sight;
10 that's the limitation of all FM. That required if you were operating behind the mountain,
11 you had to put a team, we used to call them X-ray teams, up on top of the mountain to
12 relay your communications through that relay net—that antenna on top of a mountain to
13 broadcast the other side and probably the target was the Da Nang area where the battalion
14 headquarters is located.

15 KC: And how many of these PRC-10s would you have?

16 CD: Each four-man team had one radio. Now, with a seven-man team, one of the
17 joys was that extra manpower often allowed you to carry an extra radio if the first one
18 went down for mechanical problems or the batteries. Keep in mind now, seven men and
19 two radios required at least four to six batteries. Just operating for three or four days. If in
20 the course of an operation, there might have been an aerial resupply. Again, in the
21 helicopters that supported us back then, the Marines had the old H—Sikorsky H-34. We
22 didn't have the OH-1H Bell, what is commonly known as the Huey. You only had old H-
23 34s that would supply us, and they would occasionally drop batteries or drop them at a
24 point where we could go collect them along the trail. So, it was limited with radio
25 communications. Within five years the United States, and I'd say it dramatically and
26 markedly improved the quality of field communications available to tactical infantry
27 ground units and reconnaissance units.

28 KC: All right, now you've done just a fabulous job of setting the stage for what
29 you're carrying with you, how you're going to operate, how you're going to coordinate.
30 All of these kinds of things. You mentioned a moment ago where I got you off on this
31 area of how you're setting up on patrols. You're talking about your first engagement in

1 which how you were involved and your first engagement in which Americans and
2 Marines were involved. Tell me about that recon patrol. I mean, from the time you get the
3 orders to how you're going to set things up to leaving your base area to going out and
4 patrolling. Take me through all of it in as much detail as you can.

5 CD: Okay, let me talk about that one. It really was battalion sized. It happened in
6 a place called Binh Thai, B-I-N-H T-H-A-I. Pat Collins had decided that the river that
7 flowed west from Da Nang, southwest from the airfield. We could stay along the
8 riverbank. There was a road, and we would patrol this in company size. That is, three
9 platoons in trace of each other in ten minutes. One platoon would go through and ten
10 minutes later the next platoon and then the third platoon would come ten minutes after
11 that. The reason for that is, as you moved along the first platoon—and you moved
12 through villages along the riverbank. The people, VC might have hidden in the riverbank
13 or under the village so at the second wave, you would catch him. Now, we started off in
14 the morning and we moved about two miles. We also had an infantry company on alert
15 that if we developed something, we could vector in that infantry company if some two
16 hundred Marines backed down to where Pat thought they could best influence the action
17 in our favor during the course a firefight that might've developed. As we moved along,
18 the First Platoon, which was led by Lieutenant Vankat came across, with the river right
19 on their left came across a big open paddy. At the far end of the paddy was a village, the
20 Village of Binh Thai. As Vankat started to move across those paddies, that's an open
21 face, and it was dangerous. We were learning. We had a good fortune; it was pretty dry.
22 The paddies were not irrigated so that meant you could move across them on dry land
23 fairly quickly and you could maneuver. So, when Vankat had his platoon, most of them
24 out in the open that were taken under fire by North Vietnamese machineguns in an L
25 shaped ambush. It meant that the North Vietnamese were firing right down, parallel to the
26 river on the right side right down the road. In the village there were mixed small arms for
27 the VC Company. I told Vankat—and I used this word, "Cautiously pinned down."
28 Pinned down means you cannot physically put your hand in the air without losing a
29 finger. That is pinned down. You cannot physically move at all. You become a very
30 prime target. See, for years the VC had been fighting the ARVN (Army of the Republic
31 of Vietnam), and the ARVN would bog down and freeze and they could pick them off.

1 So, we had a situation where Vankat was under tremendous pressure with his troops
2 using the walls of the rice paddies. Three or four inches of mud that separated paddies as
3 his only cover from incoming small arms from the village and being raked by
4 machineguns. I was with the Second Platoon. Pat came up and we realized the situation.
5 Meanwhile, by the way, the VC had, on the west side of the river, firing into Vankat's
6 back. So, it was basically a three-way ambush and the centerpiece being the
7 machineguns. Pat directed me to take the Second Platoon and move to the right and begin
8 to envelope this village and bring small arms fire to bear. To relieve the pressure of
9 Vankat. Vankat began to disengage as best he could, crawling, from those paddies back
10 to some sort of fire position. The Third Platoon came up to me on supportive base fire
11 over Vankat's head into the village. So that fire from two platoons into the village and
12 trying to silence that machinegun by putting a lot of fire over there. This is not working
13 because Vankat is having trouble disengaging. Pat then ordered something that is unique
14 in the Vietnam War, "fix bayonets."

15 KC: Wow.

16 CD: We are going to assault this village with three platoons. This is recon!

17 KC: Wow.

18 CD: That's what we do. We go yelling and screaming with fixed bayonets and to
19 this day, I believe, the VC had never seen targets shooting and moving at them. So, with
20 the combined firepower of at least two recon platoons, which is just about thirty-five,
21 forty people, we have a line and we're coming on-line right at this village firing with
22 fixed bayonets. That caused a number of whistles to go off which is an NVA signal to
23 disengage. So, the Vietnamese realized that the Marines are charging across these
24 paddies, about a hundred yards right at them. They chose at that time not to engage
25 physically, but to withdrawal. We take the village, we have a few lightly wounded, we're
26 very, very lucky, but the brilliance of that to order a bayonet attack, the opposition never
27 having seen that. And us, the young and fearless charging seemed to work that day. So,
28 we then began to pursuit them through the village and found a few wounded, a few dead
29 and we chased them west. Now, thirty-five minutes later that infantry company shows up.
30 They came by helicopter, and they want to know where the big firefight is. We said,
31 "Hey, fellas. Not today. It's already gone." That was the first day where I, personally, had

1 been engaged in a pretty good-sized firefight with a good-sized enemy. Probably
2 anywhere from sixty to eighty VA, NVA, whatever the mix was. But again, I chose to
3 believe there were NVA in that mix because the way they had laid out the ambush and
4 the heavy weapons.

5 KC: So, you come under this fire, and you walked into this L-shape ambush, and
6 you've got a very good feeling these guys are good, they're top-quality guys. Did you
7 know what to expect from the VC or the NVA? I mean, in terms of tactical ability and
8 what they could bring to bear?

9 CD: You don't have time to think. If somebody had said to me, "How long did
10 that encounter take?" I would have said, "Oh, about twenty minutes," in reality it was
11 probably closer to two hours. One of the senses that you lose in real force on force
12 combat situations is your sensing of time. You are in a reactive mode, you're living on
13 instincts and a lot of Hail Marys, but you do what is told. There's a force inside you that
14 propels you to try to do the right thing and all the good things that come to the Marine
15 Corps can come to them. But when you finally have time to think after it's all over and
16 you begin to analyze, you begin to admire that that group of NVA had complete
17 appreciation—terrain appreciation. They knew what they were doing. They knew how to
18 use terrain, and they had a sense of timing. They knew how to set up. Again, we were
19 taking fire at our backs from across the river, but they had walked through that ambush
20 and had the precision of laying it out and knew that in a couple of days they were going
21 to come that way. So, you had to admire their tenacity. They stayed until it was time to
22 go. They maximized what they could do that they blew the whistle, literally, and moved
23 off. Their use of terrain, fighting holes, camouflage and just pure guts going up against
24 the force that had air and indirect weapons most of the time. Which was denied to them.
25 You had to admire that these guys were pros.

26 KC: Let me ask you what could be a stupid question. This is the first time you are
27 engaged in combat, in Vietnam, and you're walking into this ambush. Are you afraid?

28 CD: Yeah, in a way you are, but you don't have time. You just eat the fear.
29 Particularly when you have colleagues that are under duress. There is an instinct, and it is
30 accredited to Marine Corps training you trying to do the right thing. You eat your fear,

1 and you just get on with it. You say your Hail Mary and as we used to say, “You make a
2 Vietnamese confession.” Have you ever heard that term?

3 KC: No, I have not.

4 CD: You put your had between your legs and kiss your ass goodbye because you
5 ain’t going to see tomorrow.

6 KC: (Laughing)

7 CD: So that was the Vietnamese confession. All those kinds of things looking
8 back are overcome by this tremendous urge to do the right thing. The old Spartan
9 message, “Bring home your son, bring home your shield or bring your son home on it.”
10 You want to do the right thing and not let your comrades and your colleagues down. It’s
11 got nothing to do with mom and apple pie. It has to do with your peers that are under
12 pressure or suffering. It is your mission to do the right thing and relieve that pressure on
13 them.

14 KC: Captain Collins gives you the order to fix bayonets. When he says this, what
15 goes through your mind?

16 CD: “Gee, where the hell is my bayonet? If I got it, did I bring it?”

17 KC: (Laughing)

18 CD: Remember, a lot of guys were jettisoning. I think looking back that is the last
19 thing any of us thought would be, that would be the base wall call of the day.

20 KC: Right.

21 CD: But Pat said fix bayonets. Just going through that drill you say, “Oh, the last
22 time somebody must have done this was the Civil War.” But you do it and it gives you a
23 sense of, “Hey, I’m going to have to put somebody on the end of this blade, here.” But
24 that was the call and then the rally is about sixty to eighty troops get up and start going up
25 about a hundred meters across these paddies with dike walls. Very small, about eighteen
26 inches. But behind those walls are my colleagues, Vankat and all his people being pinned
27 down. Vankat gets wounded twice that day. He takes two slight wounds, but they count.
28 By the way, Vankat is the first person wounded in Vietnam in the Marines three times.
29 Back then there was an emerging rule. If you take three Purple Hearts, you go home. So
30 that day Vankat was on his way to the third strike which he received later in the month.
31 The ability to do this—and this is all over in about twenty minutes. The whole firefight

1 probably took about two hours. You'd put the bayonet on, and you do what is right and
2 we did that, and that was a credit to—again now I'm a novice in all this, but Pat had been
3 an old mustang, Pat had seen combat in Korea. Pat was a little older than the average
4 captain. Pat at that time was about thirty-two years old. So, everybody in that company
5 had great trust in the abilities and skills and the good old Irish guts of Pat Collins. So,
6 when Pat goes, we went.

7 KC: When this is over—

8 CD: Also, in that company we had a first sergeant, Harry Rogers, who stood 5'4"
9 and had his nose broken three times boxing. Harry was a tough little guy from Boston. He
10 was a boxer and had won about thirty fights. We had problem children in that company.
11 We had smokers, boxing smokers. Whoever you are, no matter how big you were, the
12 last fighter of the day was whoever our biggest problem child was against the first
13 sergeant. So, Harry was a tough nosed little guy. Between Harry kicking troops in the
14 fantail and Pat leading from the front, we got a lot of good things done.

15 KC: That's really interesting you should say that. When it's all over, when the
16 enemy has disengaged and that particular action has ended, what do you do?

17 CD: Oh, well, first you sit down and you realize what time it is. You just can't
18 believe that that much transgressed and in your mind it's twenty minutes when it's really
19 two hours. Your body goes into sort of a lull. You look for water because of the amount
20 of sweat and the heat and so on, you need to replenish water. Then you go into the
21 mechanical things and making sure you've got all your people and everybody's all right.
22 You've double checked the roster that you've got everybody. Nobody's wounded. If it's
23 a firefight when somebody was hit, you got the appropriate ambulance. We did a lot of
24 ground travel evacuating people back then, too. All that air is in town to take up your
25 wounded and get them out of there. You're going through a sequence of checklists. And
26 then, by then it's three in the afternoon and something that started at nine-thirty in the
27 morning and you make your way back there, that's it for the day and you make your way
28 back to the base you were operating at. It's sort of a clean up to get ready to take on
29 something else the next day. Remember now, back then a reconnaissance company, a lot
30 of people back in the rear were critical. What is a recon company doing in all these
31 combat fights? That's not their job. The whole notion of reconnaissance is a small four,

1 seven-man team or companies operating on patrols or even in July we had a couple of
2 battalion-sized operations where Lieutenant Van Cleave would take two companies plus
3 the battalion headquarters up into the hills west of Da Nang. So, the whole mission, the
4 nature, the types of equipment were being challenged. We worked for the good in a very
5 short period of time.

6 KC: You talked about the checklist you have to go down. You talked about sitting
7 down, looked at your watch, getting a drink of water, finding out where your men were,
8 taking care of those who were wounded, if they're wounded. Finding an ambulance for
9 them one way or another and all these things. You make your way back to the base area.
10 At any particular time, do you look back at the performance of the men in your platoon
11 and say, "Okay, here's someone who was outstanding that I know or someone that I trust
12 told me what they did." Also, do you recognize anyone who had not performed up to the
13 standard that you think they should perform? How do you deal with both those who
14 excelled and those who, perhaps, didn't excel?

15 CD: Your question is a good one and a timely one but hidden in that question is
16 something I've forgotten to this point. It's to identify and attribute—the strength of the
17 Marine Corps is always in their staff NCOs. I talked about the experience levels and the
18 good fortunes serving with Captain Pat Collins who had Korean experience. In that recon
19 company, starting from the first sergeants, the three platoon sergeants were all first-grade
20 staff, non-commissioned officers. Superior. Pat had hand-picked them. Some of them
21 were from Korean vintage. They weren't as spry at getting around as some of the younger
22 troops that they commanded. We had the good fortune and a blessing of superior and
23 brave feelings of staff NCOs who really looked after their troops. Many of these staff
24 NCOs had been in infantry battalions. They were used to forty-man platoons. In the
25 reconnaissance battalion there were eighty men in the company. To work in a small
26 group, I remember, I mentioned that initially we started sending out patrols. The only two
27 people that Pat would put in charge as platoon commanders was the platoon commander
28 himself, a lieutenant or the staff NCO. They would take out these seven-man teams. So,
29 we had the blessings of good staff NCOs. When you have leaders like that, the troops
30 tend to emulate them. So, we had minimum disciplinary problems. Ironically, and this
31 may sound naïve, I never saw a drug problem, I never heard of a drug problem in 3rd

1 Reconnaissance guys all during 1965. These stories about drugs and everything, my sense
2 even related to us was most of those infractions of justice, slovenly attitudes, cowardly
3 attitudes, all occurred toward the rear areas. And so, the message is, people who have
4 time on their hands, especially young troops, tend to get in trouble. Better than those
5 gainfully employed and happy in their work. So, we did not have any of those drug-
6 oriented questions because of superlative staff NCOs. The troops were gainfully
7 employed doing something that they took a lot of pride in. They didn't have time on their
8 hands. They were happy people. Did that answer the question?

9 KC: Sure, sure. Absolutely it does. Of course, as a lieutenant you depend upon
10 your NCOs to look after.

11 CD: Absolutely, especially if you operate in four- to seven-man groups. That's a
12 very tight operation that you run with somebody anywhere from three to seven days.
13 Everybody has their assigned tasks. Particularly doing the movement phase. When you
14 exit the helicopter at night and when you're moving toward patrol base to operate out of
15 or observe from. Each of those young Marines had a specific job in the tasking and your
16 trust on them is implicit. And they on you, they look to you for navigation and directing
17 communications and the ability to direct in a firefight. More or less bring in over the
18 radio to be able to bring in indirect firepower. You trained those troops, too. All of those
19 troops in my platoons and other platoons, after a period of time in country, could bring in
20 fixed-wing aircraft and could direct artillery. So, what I'm saying is, you move the way
21 the battalion was set up on paper. On paper the officers were not supposed to go out. The
22 senior man on each one of these four-man teams was a corporal. And the corporal was
23 supposed to be capable of indirect fire support, patrol directions, bringing fire to bear. Pat
24 always thought his brand to soldiering was, "No, no, wait a minute. A troop will go
25 anywhere you tell him if you're two feet in front of him." So, we made sure that the
26 officers and staff NCOs got fully engaged in patrolling.

27 KC: Well, why don't we stop there for today, Colonel?

Interview with Carmine DelGrosso

Session [2] of [6]

Date: 19 October 2010

1 Kelly Crager: This is Kelly Crager continuing an oral history interview with
2 Colonel Carmine DelGrosso. Today is October 19, 2010. I am in Lubbock, Texas, on the
3 campus of Texas Tech University and Colonel DelGrosso is joining me by telephone
4 from San Clemente, California. All right, Colonel, I had to interrupt you there just a
5 second ago before I turned on the recorder. You were kind of giving an overview of the
6 time of transition, as you put it, in the early days.

7 Carmine DelGrosso: Right when I came back about Phase I of our dialog.

8 KC: Yeah, please tell me about that.

9 CD: I was trying to best encapsulate that. My assessment is in the period of early
10 March 1965 through about July, for 3rd Reconnaissance Battalion and Company D, of
11 which I was assigned. In general, most of the Marines who came ashore with the 9th Ex-
12 Marine Expeditionary Brigade, was a period of transition where the doctrine under which
13 3rd Reconnaissance Battalion had operated, was challenged for what was working. We
14 jettisoned large parts of it. We made tactics up as we went along and then made
15 adjustments. Things like communications. We learned the limits of our communications,
16 what we could do and what we couldn't do with the equipment. That, to a degree,
17 dictated the tactical area of responsibilities, the distances that we could go and could
18 operate by radio relay. At the individual level, our clothing, we learned what to jettison
19 and what to keep. What was of use, what was a disadvantage to us. So, by July we also
20 had learned that probably the correct number for a small unit, reconnaissance patrol, was
21 about seven. So, by July, all the troops were comfortable with themselves. With their
22 equipment, with their communication tactics. Much of the jargon that is needed to
23 communicate and brief and understanding of the terms have been worked out. Perhaps,
24 most of all, by July, the troops learned that darkness was their friend. The old term, "He
25 who owns the night wins," was in full force. By July we had the battalion ashore and all
26 four of the operational letter companies were working along swimmingly. We also knew
27 the enemy. We could read the telltale signs that the VC had been in the area, or it was a

1 hardcore North Vietnamese unit that had been in the area. We could shoot, move, and
2 communicate rather fluidly in that particular terrain surrounding Da Nang, Vietnam.

3 KC: Okay, let me ask you a series of questions here based on all those things that
4 you've talked about. I want to get as specific information as I can. You were talking
5 about the things that you would carry with you out there. The things that you would
6 jettison and that you would keep. Obviously, you were looking for things that don't make
7 much noise, things that are light, and things that are useful. You mentioned yesterday that
8 the first thing you got rid of were skivvie shorts. What other things would you take with
9 you? If you had to pack your pack or even if you would take a pack, what sort of things
10 would you bring with you and why would you bring them?

11 CD: Well, perhaps the most important thing in the reconnaissance business was
12 your map. It was a sacred piece of scripture, and you had to protect it. So, we learned
13 early on how to write home and get people to send us Saranwrap-type material or plastic
14 bags which that map could be kept. You would keep it inside, sort of like your breast
15 plate. So, the map was just the central issue. Also, with that came accomplished people
16 that got very, very proficient on the use of the compass. And third, their radio, to protect
17 that radio. It was the key to all the American firepower. Also, by July, the rules of
18 engagement in terms of use of artillery and in close supporting had been worked out. So,
19 in a very reasonable period of time, a seven-man team could bring to bear if need be,
20 artillery and air. Sometimes we would patrol beyond the artillery fan, the scope of the
21 artillery capability. When that happened, again, we owed that radio. And that radio meant
22 that everybody in that team knew how to use that radio. Every man in that team could call
23 in close air support and knew the formula and the correct steps for a fast-moving aircraft
24 or even a slower propeller-driven aircraft arrived on station to support them. The next
25 thing was socks. Those socks were also protected and you brought one, two, three extra
26 pairs of socks. When it rained, you were soaked completely through. Also, about the first
27 ninety days we were beginning to be issued the jungle boot which was a great step
28 forward. Between the socks and the new jungle boot, you had a greater chance of beating
29 immersion foot. Always, even on a patrol, the furthest patrol once a day, we would stop
30 and have the patrol, for an hour or so, be able to take their boots off in the rain and let
31 their feet dry or at night in a safe harbor site. Allowed half of their troops to take their

1 boots off and allow their feet to dry. You cannot stay out on a patrol. Most of the patrols
2 went anywhere from three to eight days. You needed to ensure that your feet worked and
3 that meant immersion foot prevention. So, the socks came into play. Then there was food,
4 what to carry for food. Most people would go through C-rations which were World War
5 II C-rations. Even had Lucky Strike and Pall Mall cigarettes involved. What particular
6 types of cans of food that they felt they could nourish themselves on and would try to eat
7 only once a day. So, the amount of food, if you carried four or five of those C-ration
8 cartons, they weighed about six or eight pounds. We would cut that down to maybe two
9 pounds. Because at this time, these new C-rations where you just had water or you could
10 eat on the run that are very light. A whole generation of controlled food that gave you
11 sustenance, a degree of strength, had not been introduced yet. We were still operating in
12 the field on the Korean vintage and all the C-rations. The food, the type of clothing you
13 relished. You got rid of all your under clothing. The amount of ammunition you would
14 carry, cleaning gear for your weapon, your map, socks, and your boots, and a decent
15 cover. Now, I say a decent cover as something that kept the sun out of your eyes and kept
16 the rain from running down the crack of your fan tail and clothing that could dry quickly
17 when it rained, you still kept moving. So certain areas around Da Nang at certain times,
18 you were constantly wet. You just patrolled and lived in the wet jungle. At night was the
19 only time we had a chance where we were in a safe off sight to dry out your feet.

20 KC: How many rounds of ammunition would you consider adequate for a seven-
21 man patrol?

22 CD: What we tried to do, again, and this was not in the table of equipment, was
23 the M-79. We borrowed a number of M-79s because the M-79, if you were in an ambush,
24 it was the weapon of decision. It allowed you seven men, if you were in a much larger
25 force, particularly in a trail type situation in the deep jungle west of Da Nang, an M-79
26 could put a round, a hand grenade-size round in an aperture, one foot by three feet at
27 eighty-five yards. So, if you had a proficient M-79 gunner, he was the difference that if
28 you were ambushed, you could break out of that ambush or have a chance to turn the
29 ambush back on the enemy. So, everybody else carried the M-14 and probably 120 to 150
30 rounds of ammunition. Most people also had a combat knife, and everybody had one or
31 two hand grenades. That is still a significant amount of weight. That ammunition, that

1 rifle, and somebody with the M-79 trekking up and downhill for some times at highest
2 3,000 feet.

3 KC: Tell me about your combat patrol on your reconnaissance patrol. You say
4 seven men. Why seven men and who were the seven men? What were their jobs?

5 CD: The seven men—we didn't have the luxury of a corpsman. So, somebody
6 had had some knowledge and the corpsman back in the rear area. The battalion in
7 medical aid staff would teach somebody enough about first aid. So, you had the platoon
8 commander. This was usually an officer or one of the staff NCOs in the company. That
9 accounted for the leadership of seven. The radio operator was the second most important
10 man. So, the next five people would adjust the patrol. Which was usually the point and
11 the assisted point. Then the patrol leader, then the radio operator. Then in a line of
12 sequence the following two were following tail or the close ends. Really those two people
13 in the rear could be vectored if you ran into an ambush on the trail. Left or right to sort of
14 create a flank and then begin to flank what was ahead of us on the path as we would
15 engage people. I've been in a number of those, too. You're coming down the trail and the
16 last thing the North Vietnamese who had been operating ten to twelve miles west of Da
17 Nang never saw a western face. All of a sudden it took a turn to recon patrol. Ironically,
18 most of the time when we confronted each other, their weapons were sling-arms, so we
19 had the advantage to be able to shoot first and create their casualties and then pursue
20 them. So, we had the initial jump, usually on a patrol when we engaged them because we
21 never thought we'd be that far west of Da Nang or southwest.

22 KC: So, you had that tactical advantage early on?

23 CD: Right, and again, to have that M-79, when one person carried bandoleers, he
24 would probably be armed with about twenty-four, thirty rounds, and he carried a pistol.

25 KC: All right, now you also talked about the enemy and finding signs of the
26 enemy. What were the telltale signs of the VC, NVA, and how could you tell the
27 difference?

28 CD: When you get back in the deep jungle, you're basically operating along the
29 path, very quietly at night. That's how they travelled. They only had their rubber sole
30 shoes. Only the NVA had boots. But there would be paths. It wasn't that you were just
31 thrashing through jungle, you went along paths. You would find little pieces of

1 waterproof cloth or plastic ribbons like the color blue, which indicated you were on the
2 correct trail. They knew signs similar to the American Indian for direction, who had been
3 through this area with a color code and by stacking pebbles and rocks in the vicinity of
4 these pieces of blue plastic or orange plastic. Now, these were scattered. They'd probably
5 be around two to four hundred yards. So, as you walked along the trail, you would see
6 these blue markers, and you would know two things that you had a pretty good chance
7 that that trail was not mine. And second, you were on the right track. But if you looked at
8 the ground and studied the ground as you moved, even at night, you could see these
9 markers. There were also hachures in trees. We had some people who were very
10 proficient at reading the hachures and how—and the hachures indicated how long the last
11 friendly VC had gone through the area. Sometimes the unit markings were hacked into
12 the trees or by the arrangement stones on the ground.

13 KC: That's fascinating. How did you first discover this sort of thing?

14 CD: You just find it odd that why would somebody have a piece of plastic in the
15 ground here? You know, if it didn't meet the eye, it'd be off the trail a bit, but it was
16 visible. Why would somebody take the time to do that? And then when you find another
17 one a little further down the trail, you see a pattern. So, it was basically pattern
18 recognition. And also, the hachure marks on trees. The ability to see stones piled in a
19 certain configuration.

20 KC: Now, that was the VC. What about the NVA?

21 CD: Oh, the NVA, they were a little more bullish. They had boots and they
22 traveled in numbers. Nearly anywhere from twenty to a hundred. They had a tendency
23 to—they used all sort of signs. They were proficient at reading. They were the signs that
24 the VC used. But they also had a tendency to knock down a lot of things. Trees, tree
25 cuttings. Sort of like an elephant going through grass and knocks down the grass and you
26 can see them. Sometimes the NVA would sort of infringe upon the forest. They would sit
27 down and hack out an area where they wanted to stay for a couple hours. So, you find an
28 area that had four or five hachure marks in a course of a hundred yards. That meant there
29 was probably some good-sized unit that had come through there trying to get off the
30 mainstream trail. Using the camouflage in the overhead, sometimes it was triple canopy.
31 But they still always got off the trail when they took a break. They didn't just sit down in

1 the trial. So, whenever we'd see these escarpments, these hachure marks, six or eight of
2 them in a cause of about a hundred meters, would give you the idea that a large unit was
3 using this trail and might have been through there in a reasonable period of time in the
4 last day or two. If sometimes you're really lucky, you find a couple cigarette butts.

5 KC: Now, you mention the phrase, or alluded to the phrase, "Having to own the
6 night." Explain that to me.

7 CD: Everybody has a (unintelligible) to the battlefield, a childhood dreams, and
8 fears of the unexpected, nightmares and so on. When you get a unit that can work
9 together and own the night, meaning they are comfortable, they have no fear or a modest
10 fear which can be contained in their ability to shoot, move, and communicate at night and
11 that the night was their friend. You've got seven guys and you're not sure what you're
12 going to run into. The ability of your team to quietly move pretty good distances at night
13 breeds confidence in a small unit and that they could go pretty good distances in three or
14 four days. What I mean by that is they could travel eight, twelve, fifteen miles at night
15 from your initial insertion zone, develops a skill. So, they look forward to being put in
16 late in the afternoon, very, very late so that darkness is their friend and that the enemy
17 could not pursue them with any success at night. It's the measure of self-confidence of a
18 small unit.

19 KC: All right, you had mentioned yesterday, you talked about this initial
20 engagement in which you were involved, and it was a hairy situation. You gave me a
21 great blow by blow. You make it back to base camp and you're putting things back
22 together. How long is it before you receive orders to go out on patrol again, typically?

23 CD: Remember now, I think on paper at full max, a reconnaissance battalion is
24 able to field like the number was forty-four teams at one time, but that never happened.
25 You have sick, you have people on leave. There was this brand-new concept starting
26 called R&R (rest and relaxation). After six months you actually got to go somewhere for
27 five days. So, you've got people on R&R. The reality is—and then you have to rest
28 people, too, between patrols. Usually, we worked out like this. I'd say, looking back, you
29 rested for three days and then those three days the first day back you'd clean up and get
30 your mail, see the doctor, or whatever, account for your weapons and get debriefed.
31 Where you had been, what you had seen. The second day was a little R&R to writing

1 home and so on. The third day was to get ready to go out for a patrol. It was three days
2 back and anywhere from five to eight days out again. So, the duration of the patrols in
3 Company D, we were able to field at any one time, had five teams in the field and two
4 teams back awaiting to go out.

5 KC: Now, when you get back—because this is kind of a formative period for
6 what recon is trying to do there in Vietnam. When you get back to the company HQ or
7 the company area, do you, as a platoon leader, get with other platoon leaders and say,
8 “Look, this is what we did, this is what works for us.”?

9 CD: You share—the key was, when I say debrief, you would talk to the G-2—the
10 S-2, the intelligence staff, and the S-3 operational staff. You would debrief them formally
11 on your route for where you had been and what you had seen. They would plot and store
12 this information historically. Well, the S-3 operational side would look to respond to new
13 areas and intelligence coming down from the division on areas of interest where the
14 division wanted to put the reconnaissance battalion. Now, sometimes these
15 reconnaissance companies were assigned to a regiment, an infantry regiment like the 9th
16 Marines or the 3rd Marines. That was the case with Company D working for the 9th
17 Marines doing reconnaissance work in front of their lines south of Da Nang. We did that
18 for about six weeks through 1975. Also, please keep in mind, there are different methods
19 of entry from ground reconnaissance. That notion of parachuting in and all that, that’s
20 just a method of entry. The name of the game in reconnaissance, you get on the ground,
21 and the same with the infantry; you shoot, move, and communicate. In today’s Special
22 Forces and all this sort of thing, I see too much emphasis on the method of entry.
23 Whether they swim in, whether they jump in, whether they’re going to use HALO (high
24 altitude, low opening parachuting) techniques, you’ve got to stick with the basics. Get
25 people in on the ground. We were inserted not only by helicopter, but often by truck to a
26 furthest point where we ran out of road. We offloaded a truck and then we went into a
27 jungle area, or we walked in, maybe ten miles to where the area was. We would walk it at
28 night.

29 KC: What sort of things did other platoon commanders or other companies, even,
30 come up with that you guys hadn’t thought of on your own?

1 CD: Yes, there was a good fair sharing between the comradery and rapport with
2 the other lieutenants and the other junior officers in the battalion. Remember now, the 3rd
3 Recon Battalion I had mentioned had one company thirty miles by Phu Bai area, about
4 thirty to forty miles north of Da Nang. It was another company operating down in the
5 Chu Lai area so that left two letter companies in Da Nang and the other two outlying in
6 Chu Lai and Phu Bai. We were co-located with the 3rd Recon Battalion staff, just in the
7 shadows of Hill 327, which was where the 3rd Marine Division had set up from early
8 June, their division headquarters. So, there was quite a bit of sharing and understanding
9 techniques which, when you went back to for three days you would have a beer at night,
10 and the battalion contemporaries and information was shared.

11 KC: Was there any specific piece of information or any specific approach that
12 someone else had stumbled upon or decided to work best for them that you implemented
13 in yours? Is there anything that stands out?

14 CD: You know, I can't think of something where we borrowed from another
15 company offhand, but I remember lots of stories on what not to do.

16 KC: Okay, tell me some of those.

17 CD: I won't name him, but we had one platoon commander who was out on a
18 patrol up north in the Phu Bai area who was kind of frustrated on where he was and
19 trying to correlate his map to his actual position on the ground. So, he had his team, I
20 don't know, it was four or seven men, strung out along the trail in defilade position
21 hiding. And he climbed the tree to see where he was. So that he could get his coordinates,
22 bearing coordinates with his compass. That he was in the correct place he thought he was
23 on the map. So, he's up in the tree and here come a number of VC down the trail and stop
24 right under the tree he was in. He got his pistol out and got a round or two off before the
25 VC realized, by looking up, there was somebody up in the tree. That type of a story
26 intuited, don't climb trees. Those are the kinds of things, the dos and don'ts; that's a good
27 example of a don't.

28 KC: What happened to him, by the way? Was he okay?

29 CD: Yeah, he got a shot off. His first round jammed in his .45. The second round
30 he got off, but by then the VC had cut loose that there was somebody above him in the
31 tree and went back down the trail, they were pursued. There was no fire exchanged

1 except for Lieutenant Natrine. As I understand the story. They never found a VC, either.
2 So he was a good officer, a very capable officer, but that was just something I could
3 commiserate with his exasperation. Because he could read a map. You know, you learn
4 how to read a map, this reconnaissance, particularly with the terrain it is the focal point.
5 You need to know exactly where you are at all times on the map. So, to answer your
6 question, we have a lot of dos and don'ts that we pass back, but mostly don'ts.

7 KC: Were there any other don'ts that you can think of? I know I'm asking you to
8 think back forty-five years, of course.

9 CD: Yeah, there was one that was important. It is, "You must constantly break up
10 the pattern for insertion." You know, I watched later in life in other tours, the Army
11 operating down in the delta. The war would be over for the night, but in the morning,
12 seven-thirty bright and early, here would come the US Army with a company embarked
13 on helicopters sort of like from "*Apocalypse Now*," riding out to be inserted somewhere.
14 The VC always knew, seven-thirty every morning the war starts again. So, we would be
15 very careful not to repeat insertion methods at the same time, the same patterns for
16 insertion by helicopter.

17 KC: Well, of course that makes sense, stands to reason, obviously.

18 CD: Well, if you looked at *Black Hawk Down* I am convinced from reading
19 historical documents from *Black Hawk Down*. And even seeing the movie, there was no
20 need to do repelling into that part of Somalia, and they were like clockwork. Every day,
21 here they'd come with their helicopters. They repeated patterns that were picked up and
22 telegraphed to the opposition and they paid a terrible price. So, my point is, we would be
23 very sensitive to the methods of insertion and not total reliance on helicopters, but to
24 walk in or be carried in by truck to the area rather than reliance on helicopters all the
25 time.

26 KC: I see.

27 CD: Also, about this time, we had been relying on the H-34, the Sikorsky
28 helicopter. That was our method of insertion. We did not use anything smaller. There
29 were no Hueys. The Hueys were assigned to the division, usually to carry VIPs around.
30 The gunship had not arrived yet. We had no support from Cobra aircraft. It was just the
31 H-34. We had the luxury occasionally of having an Air Force Bird Dog or some sort of

1 fixed-wing aircraft that acted as an aerial forward observer who could vector fast movers
2 in the area. See, here's another thing, we could not talk with the PRC-10 directly to fast-
3 moving aircraft. They were on a different communication system. What we would have
4 to do is talk FM to the OV-10 or an H-34 helicopter in the area who, on another radio, on
5 his dashboard, could turn FM freq (frequency) and talk to the fast movers. That was one
6 of the limits of the system. Only later in the year, just after the adjustment period did we
7 receive the PRC-47, I believe, which allowed us—we had an air-ground radio that
8 allowed us to talk to fast movers, but that was at the company level.

9 KC: Did you find any difficulties with this communication system? There you are
10 with the PRC-10 having to relay it to an airborne—

11 CD: First of all, to give you a scenario, it would go from the backpack of the men,
12 seven-man team often through a relay, like we would put up a relay on the high piece of
13 ground that could see back to the division area. So, you'd be further west relaying
14 through an antenna that you would have to leave people from the company up on the
15 relay sight. Manning that antenna to allow you to communicate, to communicate through
16 that antenna, back to the rear area. So that was another draw down on where would that
17 relay go if you were really humping further west. And who would operate it because
18 they, too, became a target where the VC knew you were going to put your antennas on
19 the high ground. It was often dangerous work, erecting a radio relay. But it was
20 frustrating, but there were a number of occasions with fixed-wing Marine Corps airpower
21 came to our assistance. I had told you a story earlier about in the very beginning I
22 watched fixed-wing come to our area, not shoot, but rather come right over where we
23 were, stand themselves over their heads, kicking their afterburners and going straight up.
24 The noise and the dust would just panic the VC and cause them to pause, that allowed
25 them to brake or disengage or get better cover during the firefight. That was VMFA-513.
26 I remember that because after that day, going down to the bar, they were located at the
27 Da Nang airfield, seeking them out in the bar and buying them a bunch of drinks to say
28 thank you.

29 KC: How long did this tactic work? I mean, did the VC ever get used to it and
30 know what was going on and just moved on and it didn't bother them anymore?

1 CD: These seven-man teams and this mode of operation, it lasted all through
2 1965, my entire time with 3rd Recon Battalion. I left a little after Christmas in 1965. By
3 then, they knew what the ideal patrol was, they own the night, they could shoot, move,
4 and communicate, the communication was improving, their ability to talk to air was
5 improving, they could all read maps, and these basic skills were becoming embedded into
6 the most junior man in the patrol. That is some medical ability, use of the radio, use of
7 close air, the ability to direct artillery fire. Now, there was another bunch called Force
8 Reconnaissance. There were two Force Reconnaissance Companies. Every man in these
9 companies, oh, about hundred twenty people. Every man in this company was capable of
10 being asserted by parachute and the majority of all their operators were scuba trained. We
11 had scuba in 3rd Recon Battalion, but we were allowed six or eight quotas a year. In the
12 battalion there were six or eight people who had this scuba ability. Nobody went to jump
13 out of airplane school.

14 KC: Right, right.

15 CD: Now, the Force Recon people, when they were first supported offshore. They
16 reported them sort of like vest pocket agency that worked directly for the commanding
17 general of the 9th MAB. And they were giving targets, oh, into the Laotian border and
18 they were going to jump in, but initially, remember when I told you about that transition
19 period? They did not have good success at the beginning. Known to my mind there was
20 only one successful parachute delivered patrol for the Marine Corps in all of the Marine
21 Corps' history. It was done by a first lieutenant by the name of Jerry Paul. What had
22 happened, initially, 1st Force Recon sort of overreached, they had good people, good
23 training, but they did not go through the constant process of patrolling and patrolling.
24 There were mistakes made and so on. So, the decision at the highest level is to take that
25 first recon company, a Force Recon company, and for a while, put them directly under
26 the 3rd Reconnaissance Battalion.

27 KC: To gain the experience that you guys had put together.

28 CD: That's right, and Pat Collins having been an old Force Recon guy. They
29 worked for Pat and for us. So, Pat put them on a diet of simple, basic patrolling and, oh,
30 there was the moaning and groaning. "We're beyond that. We know how to do that."
31 Nonsense, Pat treated them like billy goats. You're going to go out, you're going to eat,

1 and you're going to do the mundane stuff and you're going to build yourself up. So that
2 went on, again, in the 1st Force Recon for about, if I remember correctly, maybe two
3 months, reported directly to Doc Blanchet's 3rd Recon Battalion. After two months of
4 doing what they perceived to be a mundane past and patrolling, were judged to have
5 reached sufficient capacity on their own and self-confidence and any other test you
6 wanted to be cut loose again and qualify in basic patrolling skills and techniques to go
7 back to work for the MAB and the 9th MAB commander to do vest pocket deep, deep
8 reconnaissance missions.

9 KC: Yeah, the 1st Recon of course, is a very proud organization.

10 CD: Oh, absolutely. The pride and "We eat nails, spit tacks, we can do
11 everything." You know, the epitome of macho. Which is good, you've got to have that,
12 but in '65 they stumbled a little. They didn't have the windfall that 3rd Recon Battalion
13 had. Which was good commanders who started off slow and we went through a transition
14 of about three months. Everybody was qualified in basic patrol. Again, qualified and
15 shoot, move, and communicate as opposed to previous reliance on spending too much
16 time on methods of entry. Parachute, swimming and all that sort of thing. They're all
17 good valid, they're all great Marines, but I just wanted to recall the historic reading that
18 they had to go through that reconditioning period. And I think it was for their good and it
19 paid dividends for them later.

20 KC: Sure, sure. Colonel, what did you find to be the most difficult or challenging
21 part of this transition period while you were there in '65?

22 CD: Well, I was lucky, I was young. I didn't know this was happening. Every day
23 was an adventure. "I wonder what's going to happen next." And Pat, we were lucky, we
24 were given missions all the way around TAOR, the Tactical Area of Responsibility on
25 the periphery and beyond the TAOR of the 3rd Marine Division. So, each new patrol had
26 a different spin, a different method of insertion, a different size, and occasionally we
27 would go out in a company size. Then I remember one battalion-sized operation.

28 KC: Wow.

29 CD: It was down southwest of Da Nang.

30 KC: Tell me about that. What do you remember about that battalion?

1 CD: Well, we went with two companies plus the battalion headquarters. So now
2 you've got two recon companies. So, what I'm saying—and that's a small infantry
3 battalion. A lot of people in the classroom would debate, "That is not the role of
4 reconnaissance. What are they trying to do? A mis-employment." And so on. There we
5 were and it was a four-day, five-day patrol. It was southwest of Happy Valley. As you
6 look at Happy Valley going due west from Da Nang, it was a direct artery for the Laotian
7 border and the Ho Chi Minh Trail. So much of this stuff, looking back came into Da
8 Nang probably by porters that were carried, came through Happy Valley. It was the main
9 logistical supply line for the VC and the NVA operating that far south. So, the
10 southwestern flank of Happy Valley was a set of hills. Colonel Van Cleave took the
11 battalion in again, in trace. One recon company, maybe a half an hour later they had
12 battalion headquarters and then the second company behind them. It was a trail system
13 and went back up in there as far as we could. We were probably thirty miles from the
14 southwest of the center of Da Nang and from the airfield. We had an engagement every
15 day along the trail. Then finally, we reached the base camp. We were in a VC base camp
16 with sort of under triple canopy. It was a large cut out area from the jungle, a forest. A
17 clearing covered by canopy, but in that clearing under the trees were sheds, hooches, a
18 makeshift hospital. It was like the last area where you could have a large VC unit under
19 triple canopy before they broke down into small units and made the trek from that high
20 ground, south of Happy Valley, as they came down the trail moving into Da Nang or to
21 wherever. They were going to be assigned or reinforced or whatever. It was probably a
22 battalion minor size area to be able to cease that basecamp. Oh, and the fires were still
23 warm and all those telltale signs that they were just there and they had fled toward the
24 west and gave us a lot of desire for pursuit of which we did pursue and chase them and
25 shoot out on the trails. It was an interesting couple of days. That was the farthest
26 penetration that a reconnaissance unit in size had made, in my mind, during 1965 away
27 from a friendly area. Just about outside the artillery fan.

28 KC: Now, because this was a battalion-sized patrol, I would assume that
29 intelligence had already reported, "Look, we've got this VC base camp over here this
30 close to the border and that's why you went out in force as a battalion."

1 CD: Yeah, but again, those intel, where did we get that intel? Back then the
2 intelligence business was very, very sketchy. You were operating on somebody who
3 might have walked in and was debriefed and usually debriefed by a Vietnamese who then
4 sent across the street to say, "We have a detainee here. Said there was a base camp up
5 somewhere vaguely in this area." So, the means and methods and covered sources were
6 not as sophisticated as they are today. Even after Afghanistan or Iraq. How about this, the
7 use of the ARVN, what did they do for us? Okay, Pat had the idea, "Let's get some dogs.
8 Maybe they can help us." So, we got some ARVN handlers that had German Shepherds,
9 and we would take them on patrols. The success with the dogs and finding anything back
10 then, I remember distinctly, was 50/50. The problem with the dogs, ironically, translated
11 into the dogs, the handler, and somebody had to carry all the dog food. You know, a dog
12 has got to eat. So, if you go for five days with a dog, that means you have to bring along
13 maybe ten, fifteen cans of dog food. Who's going to carry that? So, we explored the
14 dogs' uses on the trail and could they sniff out anything in the village. We found them a
15 hit or miss affair. I remember no incident where the dogs were an absolute success as
16 they are perceived to be in the drug business at airports. We had no such success. But the
17 ARVN in general, we didn't use them, we didn't work closely with them. We were on
18 our own. Not that we despised them or we were offended by them, or we felt they were
19 incapable. There was just no need to bring them or use them in a seven-man patrol. Or
20 even at the battalion level, there were no ARVN on the staff. Rather, we got all
21 intelligence feeds from the division, which I don't know was a good idea, but it was our
22 only source. Now, where the division got their intel from the Air Force, the Army,
23 MACV (Military Assistance Command Vietnam); that was all somewhat arbitrary. What
24 I'm saying, intelligence was limited down at the operational level, we had no hot leads,
25 but rather our intelligence was derived from our own probing. When we'd get done to
26 that area, I just described what Colonel Van Cleave had realized, "Hey, this is a hot mess.
27 This is probably the last jump off point for the VC to be able to follow the trail system
28 into Da Nang from the southwest. So, your reconnaissance was flowing up because really
29 reconnaissance is an intelligence gathering institution, but to support our daily patrols, it
30 was just the wisdom of a guy named Pat Collins who said, "Look, let's go look at this
31 area. This could be hot. There could be something here. It keeps us away from the

1 villagers.” See, when you patrolled at night, you could work west of Da Nang with
2 impunity. The darkness is our friend, but when you patrol south of Da Nang, you have a
3 lot of maritime villagers, beach villagers, and fisherman. So, to be able to move with the
4 impunity that we enjoyed west of Da Nang, was rather difficult because every one of us
5 that has a dog and those dogs walk all night, all those dogs were black in color, and the
6 troops would call every black dog a VC. So, to move with impunity, it was very difficult
7 at night because of the villagers and the dogs. So, we would stay to the west and just by
8 studying the terrain and trying to deduce which would be trails the VC uses. That
9 generated our intelligence cycle and the ability to collect data and pass that up rather to
10 receive stuff down. I maybe over-killed that question for you.

11 KC: No, no, no, that’s exactly what I wanted to know about. When you
12 discovered this base area here.

13 CD: Another thing, let me stop. What is household words in today’s intelligence
14 gathering cycle; overhead photography, intercepts of message traffic, communication
15 interception, sort of à la NSA, other sophisticated means of overhead intelligence, none
16 of that was available to us. It was basically deduction, studying terrain, deducing that
17 these would probably be areas of interest or areas the VC would use. Then we would be
18 delicately inserted into those areas. The idea being that we were the division commander
19 deployed in a semi-circle from the airfield in Da Nang. The further out you could push
20 that semi-circle to the west, the safer you are from incoming artillery or mortars. You
21 could also enjoy the idea that technically on paper, at any one time, beyond his tactical
22 area of responsibility, let us say there was a belt, a zone, and RAOR, a reconnaissance
23 area of responsibility, a belt, say, of ten miles that was like a rainbow on top of his
24 tactical area of responsibility. That is the Marine two-star division commander. In that
25 zone could be sprinkled up to forty-four, seven-man teams at any one time with full max
26 pressure was a great source of comfort to the division and know that you had eyes out
27 there in front of your tactical units.

28 KC: Oh, I’m sure, absolutely.

29 CD: Like I say, like all we talked yesterday about where the division goes, that
30 was our sign we had been (unintelligible).

1 KC: All right, let's go back to the discovery of this VC base camp. You're out
2 there in a battalion-sized operation. You've found this, you talked about what it looked
3 like. What do you do with the materials you find at the base camp? What do you do with
4 them?

5 CD: Okay, we would gather those up and we took some wounded during that
6 fight. A lot of casualties in the 3rd Recon Battalion. Have you ever seen the book—it's
7 sort of an autobiography of 3rd Recon Battalion written by a gentleman named Eric
8 Vetter, V-E-T-T-E-R. I'll get you the name. In that 3rd Recon Battalion, if you held it as
9 an entity, over ten years existence in Vietnam, was probably one of the most decorated
10 Marine units and took some of the highest casualties. So, taking that and bringing it back
11 to your question, when we were evacuating wounded, we had wounded every day for
12 firefights along the trail. When the helicopters would come in and you could evacuate
13 those people—oh, by the way, those helicopters could come in in numbers, I remember
14 distinctly. We had to hack out landing zones with either hand grenades or saws or
15 machetes so that a space could be created of about thirty meters so that the helicopter
16 could drop down its winching cord and we could put that Marine in like a basket, not a
17 basket, but sort of a seat. Sometimes a basket and evacuate them out. We would hand
18 him, in a plastic bag, a patrol report, some of this stuff, these documents we would find,
19 and we would find them. The VC were not very good at document control. They left a lot
20 of stuff. They loved to tunnel. Everything was down in the tunnel. All the tunnel routes
21 you could see, that's very interesting. They always dug them for bomb protection. They
22 were definitely afraid of the B-52. We would find these documents, we would put them
23 in a plastic bag and strap them onto the body of the wounded comrade so everybody
24 knew that these documents were coming out with the wounded via a helicopter and
25 somebody would be sent down to meet the helicopter at what was called Charlie Med,
26 that's where all the casualties were taken down in the Da Nang Air Field area.

27 KC: What kind of supplies did you find here? Any?

28 CD: Supplies?

29 KC: Yes, ammunition, rice.

30 CD: Yeah, ammunition, but even as early as '65, ammunition, we treated it—it
31 was sort of a ground rule as tainted. There had been stories about the CIA (Central

1 Intelligence Agency). In fact, I read about someone recently where General Sinlov, he
2 was a colonel working for SOG, Special Operations Group, (Studies and Observation
3 Group) had, had specific missions because he was frustrated with his deep SOG missions
4 in Laos found lots and lots of ammunition. He was frustrated that he could not blow the
5 ammunition in place without giving that team's identity away. And he couldn't extricate
6 it. So, the concept began—it was a British concept from the 1900s. Why can't we seed
7 their ammunition with defective ammunition? So, you know, like an AK-47 round, you
8 can make it defective so that when the enemy uses it and it blows up in his hands or his
9 face, that serves the purpose to put fear in the hearts of the enemy. That their ammunition
10 and equipment is defective. It makes them blink. So, when we found ammunition, we
11 would just stay away from it. Either because it was booby traps or if it was too much
12 trouble to blow it in place, but we tried to bury it and we treated all their ammunition as if
13 it was defective and could not be used in friendly. You know, we had a couple of AK-47s
14 also. We had picked them up as sort of contraband, a trading material let's say. Back at
15 the base camp, if we needed plywood or something, it was amazing an old AK-47, what
16 it could buy you in trade with rear echelon units. We kind of kept a couple around as
17 barter that we had found or confiscated on patrols.

18 KC: Okay, now you also say you pursue the VC in this particular engagement.
19 Tell me about how you pursue them. You say this goes on for a few days and you're
20 receiving casualties. Tell me about that.

21 CD: Basically, because the jungle was so thick and we were operating along this
22 trail, the VC would engage in a firefight, would leave people along the trail to shoot at us
23 knowing the only way we could follow them was up this trail. So, these firefights were
24 from rock to rock, sometimes as close as thirty to fifty meters while one or two VC held
25 off the posse coming to get them, they pursued and went further west as far as they could
26 onto other trails. So, we cleared up the immediate two people firing at us. Again, you
27 could not bring firepower to bear because we were all in a line. You could not envelop
28 these people on the trail because it was just too thick to jungle. So basically, you had to
29 fight your way up this trail with sniping or throwing grenades at these people. They
30 accomplished their mission, but they bought the enemy time to escape. And then we
31 would pick up after that and continue on the same trail, never knowing what we were

1 going to find or if they had prepared ambushes further up. So, the battalion was kind of
2 stimied with two companies not linear like you would like to fight in the open ground,
3 but rather one behind the other on some jungle trail and only at the very point did the fire
4 fight occur and the VC was sniping and shooting at us at the tip of this elongated patrol.
5 Just to buy time so that their colleagues could flee further west and scatter back to some
6 rally point somewhere. In that particular interest, we never found the rally point. After a
7 while, the resistance that they were offering us sort of dissipated and all we could do was
8 say, “Yup, we moved up that trail about two or three thousand meters beyond the base
9 camp we’ve got uncovered. That probably went on all morning and then we moved back
10 to the base camp and stayed there for the evening and the battalions sort of occupied their
11 base camp. As you say, we then went on a search of these tunnels and hooches. They had
12 cabinets of ammunition in the rooms and the walls that many times I remember, we were
13 in the southern part of Da Nang that we were operating and would find a hooch and
14 would set it on fire. The secondary explosions we got, nobody was in them, of course, but
15 that was a great place to hide ammunition in the walls of a hooch or in the palm-like
16 overhead roofs. So, in this instance, with Colonel Van Cleave, we had seized one of their
17 base camps which was always the last safe jumping off point for the side unit. For the VC
18 that was their own R&R area before entry down into their Da Nang area of responsibility.

19 KC: So, you’re out for how many days? Was it five, six days you got on this
20 particular—?

21 CD: I believe that operation was probably in August of ‘65. That may have gone
22 five days. I offer that because that’s the way you see a battalion, a recon battalion minus
23 reinforced operating at a battalion sized unit in a reconnaissance patrol. I don’t think it’s
24 ever been done since.

25 KC: That’s a lot of guys to have out there on a reconnaissance patrol.

26 CD: Yeah, we had probably at least two hundred and fifty people on a
27 reconnaissance. I think Pat used to call it a reconnaissance in force. It works. Looking
28 back, we uncovered a whole bunch grid squares that we knew nothing about, nor did the
29 division. We understood that reinforced our understanding of the patterns they were using
30 like arteries coming off the Ho Chi Minh Trail over in Laos. It set back the VC and
31 denied them that area for a period of time. And then the VC, too, we found some of their

1 supplies and food and rice caches and we destroyed those. So, it denied ground to the
2 enemy and put them real cautious and realized again, who owned the night. That was
3 being taken away from them. So, it slowed their momentum quite a bit.

4 KC: You've talked before about this, not really contradiction, but in some ways, it
5 is in terms of definitions. Okay, we've got a reconnaissance patrol. How much combat
6 should the reconnaissance patrol be involved with? And now you're talking about being
7 on a company-size, you went out on this battalion-size. You see that you're being
8 effective. What is your opinion on the role, the combat role of recon? Should you be
9 getting involved, should you be limited? Should you avoid it all together? What
10 circumstances dictate where you approach—?

11 CD: Your question, Dr. Crager, is a timely one and I suspect that, that question is
12 still being hammered in the halls of the Marine Corps today in Afghanistan and Iraq. At
13 that time, remember, what we inherited in the reconnaissance business was a battalion
14 mission and a table of equipment to support it. It was Colonel Van Cleave and Colonel
15 Blanchet who were very open-minded. All our trainings to that point on Okinawa or in
16 Taiwan or the Philippines was of the idea that reconnaissance was a passive business.
17 You were to be inserted, report enemy movements, and then—the model of the battalion
18 was swift, silent, and deadly and to be extricated. To do this report, follow large groups
19 or groups of the enemy. Pat Collins—and again, it coincides with that period of initial
20 adjustment from March until July. As the division staff, people were realizing these recon
21 people are becoming a great source of intelligence. They are very innovative. We were
22 adjusting ourselves. So, at that point, the philosophy of being passive was shelved. The
23 idea being, if you had an attempt at a shot at the VC, unless it was some (unintelligible),
24 what would you rather have to say, “Oh, I just watched the VC platoon go by my
25 position, or the opportunity to kill half of them.” So, Pat Collins was of the opinion, I was
26 learning as we went, too, is “A good one is a dead one.” Now, as 1966 approached, now
27 what always happens is doctrine sometimes turns into dogma, the patterns become, “Oh,
28 we can only do this, but we can't do that.” When you have that type of inflexibility, you
29 have repetition, and the enemy has the opportunity to study you because you do the same
30 thing. But Pat Collins subscribed to keeping a more balance, switching the methods of
31 entry. We went off that if engaged or the reconnaissance patrol was compromised, that

1 we had the ability, for a limited period of time, to engage the enemy with firepower and
2 bring supporting arms to bear. If we collected information along the way, fine, but
3 preservation through firepower or engaged in a firefight if we were uncovered, that took
4 the higher ground. So you had reconnaissance business in '65, being somewhat like a
5 light combat patrol. We weren't looking for the enemy, but if we engaged them, we could
6 fight rather than trying to immediately evade. We would rather engage the enemy and try
7 to bring additional Marine firepower or airpower to bear on that target, then disengage.
8 Now, probably today in the classroom, young majors and captains are still arguing,
9 "What is the role of reconnaissance?" But for me, my experience was somewhat leaned
10 towards to be prepared for a combat operation. The mission said reconnaissance, and you
11 didn't look for trouble, but if it fell upon you, you would engage. You would not seek to
12 disengage rapidly. You would engage until additional firepower or friendly supporting or
13 reinforcing forces could be brought to bear on that target.

14 KC: And to some degree, this is a reflection of the philosophical approach of your
15 officers, as well. Like you say, Pat Collins believed in going after them. Not necessarily
16 going after them, but engaging them if they were there.

17 CD: Right, and that was Doc Blanchet's philosophy, too. Lieutenant Colonel, his
18 relief when Doc Blanchet left, Lieutenant Colonel Van Cleave, he's the one that said,
19 "Let's do this in the battalion size and see what happens." Again, still not a very
20 exploratory move. I suspect that after the departure of Colonel Van Cleave, probably
21 during 1966, things may have taken a different turn. In fact, I suspect some of the patrols
22 may have gotten longer. The communications equipment was better. The food had
23 probably reached a point where they had new instant stuff where you just add water if
24 you needed. They took on more of a passive reconnaissance control, particularly further
25 up north than I Corps. I think General Ray Davis, the most decorated Marine officer
26 during my time, had every decoration, including the Medal of Honor in Korea. He used
27 the battalion sort of like—he called it X-ray. Remember how I talked about on paper you
28 would have forty-four of these teams that you could sprinkle out in an area? Well, he
29 would do that. He would saturate areas with reconnaissance patrols. It's sort of like a day
30 of hunting in Pennsylvania when hunting season opens. There's hunters everywhere. So
31 he would sprinkle an area of reconnaissance by sectors. The two developed sectors. And

1 then being able the division. How much contact and exchange of fire are the recon people
2 taking in relation to the NVA and how much artillery are they bringing? So the abilities
3 on maps, to be able to show real time, where our patrols were. Who is in firefights with
4 who and to deduce from that intelligence patterns, sort of Ray Davis's style. He would
5 also blow the tops of a number of pretty good-sized mountains up in I Corps and put
6 artillery up there, two guns. So we'd blow six or eight tops of mountains off, put artillery
7 on each of these hilltops and mountaintops and surround them with an infantry platoon
8 for security. You could create a zone where you could reach anywhere with artillery and
9 then, in that zone, you can sprinkle these small reconnaissance seeds. Through their eyes
10 and the NVA never being able to see them, they could direct artillery fire from these fire
11 bases and that is the way a purist forms a very reconnaissance business where the teams
12 are actually unseen and directing indirect fire onto the enemy from these firebases. That
13 was General Davis's contribution to the reconnaissance. So that type of sophisticated
14 passive reconnaissance occurred later in the post '66 period.

15 KC: Sure, as you would expect it to.

16 CD: In '65, it was a Wild West show. You could explore. "He who dares, wins."
17 That's sort of the motto of the British SAS, but that's the way we operated. Now, how
18 about this, one day we were worried about patrolling the north of Da Nang. It was what
19 was called the Hai Van Pass, which, a thousand years ago separated the Viet culture from
20 the Cham civilization which was based out of Hoi An. It was a very high mountain range.
21 That if you were doing reconnaissance up in that area, you were surely to be seen. Yet,
22 under that mountain pass, from Da Nang going north along the beach, was a railway. Pat
23 even had the idea to beat being seen at Hai Van Pass during the day or at night, why don't
24 we all go down to the train station, spread out, and just as the train leaves, why don't
25 eighty guys jump on this train and take the train north under Hai Van Pass, this was a
26 tunnel. And then we get to the other side, jump off the train and spread out and go on our
27 business that way. I mean, that was the kind of wild thinking that guy had. We used to
28 call it, "The great train robbery." We never got to pull that off because the train wasn't
29 running and we were off to something else. Now, if you want to talk about a wild method
30 of insertion, it's the great train robbery. Again, it never happened, but that was in our
31 thinking. It made sense. Rather than going in by air—if we went in by air, they knew at

1 least the couple of grid squares you were in until it got dark. So, the name of the game in
2 '65 was, "Unique methods of entry, whatever works wins and we'll go with that." So, it
3 was fun to be a participant during a great exploratory phase of ground reconnaissance.

4 KC: That's incredibly interesting. Of course, you would expect it to become more
5 refined with time and with experience and then, of course, the grinding wheels of
6 bureaucracy and those things sort of appear. Then as you say, doctrine becomes dogma.
7 A lot of things become set and stone. It would have been, like you say, a very fun time if
8 that's the right word to use.

9 CD: Exactly. You know, there's an old Russian principle in engineering. Have
10 you been up close to a Mig?

11 KC: No, I have not.

12 CD: If you touch the skin's surface, you say, "Geez, there's a warm feeling. What
13 the hell is it? It's all bumpy and rough." The Russian engineering philosophy is
14 perfection is the enemy of good enough. Now, we kind of believed in that. You know,
15 back in '65 we didn't have to be neatly disguised as a potted palm or doing passive
16 reconnaissance in a deep reconnaissance patrol. If you could get out every day, get your
17 troops in the sense of being able to patrol self-confidence, shoot, move, and
18 communicate, and use the darkness, you will deny great areas to the VC and the NVA.
19 By doing that, it limited and hampered their planning in their ability to move in close to
20 the Da Nang area. No less to deliver indirect-fire weapons in Da Nang, mortars. We went
21 with that principle, just get out there and keep moving, explore, experiment, and if it
22 seemed right in your judgment, try it.

23 KC: What else about that first tour there? You leave in late '65 or early '66.

24 CD: Well, like I say I was there, and I came in in the first airwave a week after the
25 initial surface landing from the sea. I was flown there from Okinawa with a platoon to
26 meet Vankat's platoon who was ashore and formed a new fist of the company. And then
27 a few days later Pat Collins showed up with the company headquarters. And then the 3rd
28 Recon Battalion came. But what was unique for me looking back, we were blessed with
29 leadership. A guy like Pat Collins who served in Korea, was a tough Irishman that liked
30 to fight, and he was good at it. He had been to Pathfinder school, Army jump school, a
31 tour in Force Reconnaissance. Pat knew his stuff. In fact, how about this, that 80-man

1 company, in July we were running short of troops. Pat took the whole company out there
2 one day and drew a line in the sand and said, “Who wants to extend with me for an
3 additional six months?” The entire company stepped across that line.

4 KC: Wow.

5 CD: So, these guys were there anywhere from a week to four months left on their
6 tour. Because of their trust in Pat’s abilities and his soldierly virtues and no-nonsense
7 leadership, all stepped across that line, to include me. My tour was up, and I had reached
8 Okinawa in July of ‘64 and it was a thirteen-month tour. So, my tour was coming up and
9 I said, “I’ll extend another six months.”

10 KC: Why?

11 CD: Because I enjoyed Pat, the things we were doing, the novelty of it all, and
12 started to see some of the successes of his philosophy.

13 KC: Hmm, interesting, that is really interesting.

14 CD: Like I mentioned to you in an earlier session, we had no drug problem. We
15 had none of these racial issues. We were never idle. I’ve always maintained that idleness
16 breeds—when troops have time on their hands, they get into trouble. Whether it’s drugs,
17 picking on each other and all of these other nonsense stories, I never saw a fragging, that
18 I heard about later in the war. We had no drug problems, and I attribute that to Pat’s
19 leadership of staying busy. You didn’t have time when you came home from three days
20 off patrol. To put your stuff together, debrief, get some sleep, food, get ready for the next
21 patrol, and so on. Time flew when you’re having fun.

22 KC: Hmm, tell me about the time from which you re-up or extended, I should say,
23 extended until the time you leave. What sort of developments did you see during that
24 time? You’re looking at about six months there. What kind of things did you see?

25 CD: It took a physical toll on me. Like I say, I tried out for the all-Marine team in
26 track in June or late May of ‘64. By the fall of ‘65, I only weighed 127 pounds. But that’s
27 okay. I had been hospitalized for four days for malaria or possible malaria. That was also
28 something, too, the advent of malaria pills. Everybody had to take them. They were as
29 big as horse pills. Looking in toward the close of that particular period—remember
30 Vietnam is tough historically because what you have is a series of different snap shots.
31 What we were doing around Da Nang, I had no idea what that did to aid or inhibit the

1 efforts of my US Army colleagues down in the delta or in the highlands and so on. So,
2 it's a snapshot of that part and that part of time. The second half of 1965 was a period
3 where the 3rd Marine Division and 3rd Reconnaissance Battalion was consolidating,
4 streamlining, hammering out their doctrine to make sure it was correct. A development of
5 a host of new tactical approaches; both to the infantry and the ground reconnaissance.
6 The full integrations of aviation into the ground war in terms of close air support. I saw a
7 lot of that. I really got to believe that the Marines are unique because of their ability of
8 close air support. I felt very sorry for my Army colleagues who got to meet their Air
9 Force support only in the field and never got to practice together. When they did practice
10 together, it was once a month. Whereas, when the pilots came to support me with a
11 helicopter or fixed-wing, I had been in the classroom with many of them. I could
12 recognize their voices, I know who they were. I knew how far they would go for me and
13 my troops. That's a wonderful feeling when you have that close integration of air ground.
14 That's something that the Army did not enjoy, I believe. When you look at the US Air
15 Force, they have five missions. The last one was close air support. They don't spend
16 enough time together. I'm being critical of the Army and the Air Force, particularly the
17 Air Force. The Army asked for it, but maybe it's gotten better in Afghanistan and Iraq, I
18 don't know. But back then we had a consolidation of US air and ground. The helicopters
19 were very comfortable in their role. Remember now, by '65, you had a tour for an aviator
20 and a helicopter pilot in the Marine Corps was six months. By 1966-67, you had pilots on
21 their third and fourth tour of six months. So, the air was reliable, it was available, helpful.
22 We also, by the way, I remember an interesting story, use of naval gunfire on that Hai
23 Van Pass and I was hoping you had a map. It's about eight thousand feet, Hai Van Pass.
24 It's very steep and it's a natural geographic barrier between two ancient civilizations. We
25 were at Hai Van Pass and now we're going to go west along the spine of the mountain.
26 And sure, enough going up the trail we get in a firefight. Myself, and Pat, and another
27 platoon. So, you can see from that high ground, right down into the harbor at Da Nang, a
28 US American destroyer. No problem, we've got FM, we've got line of sight. We could
29 talk to the ship, and we called for naval gunfire. The first time I know for naval gunfire to
30 be used in support of ground reconnaissance. The problem is, along the spine of that
31 mountain is where the two map sheets meet. At the end of the Da Nang area and the

1 beginning of the Hue, Phu Bai area. The VC, I'm convinced, knew that if we were to call
2 naval gunfire or air, we'd be on two conflicting map sheets. So, we called naval gunfire,
3 and you know how that works. From where you are you call for rounds out in front of
4 you and then you half that and then you half that again and you run the target. Well, we
5 can see the ship, and he fires a five-inch gun, and it landed right behind us. So, we're
6 calling back to the ship to cease fire. We had to call off naval gunfire because we could
7 not coordinate between ourselves, the difference on two map sheets which they had
8 aboard the ship. The VC took advantage of that and were able to flee west and we
9 couldn't pursue them for about an hour or two because of futile naval gunfire. That's
10 another story that goes right up there with the great train ride. It's not mainstream.

11 KC: Right, and it's all around the Hai Van Pass for some reason.

12 CD: Right.

13 KC: What sort of technological developments do you see coming along for the
14 rest of your tour there in the last half of 1965? What technologically is beginning to
15 appear in the battlefields in Vietnam?

16 CD: The greatest was the verification of the M-79. It became a cornerstone of
17 each Marine infantry rifle squad. The use of the M-79, the reconnaissance, was self-
18 protection during firefights on the trail. That's at the lowest level. Technologically, the
19 advent of the PRC-25 radio to replace the old PRC-10 which constantly had to be
20 calibrated and was limited by line of sight. Weapons started to stabilize with the M-14,
21 but there was a lot of noise that some of the infantry units were beginning to receive the
22 M-16. Artillery or use of artillery and use of phosphorous. Phosphorous is a very terrible
23 weapon. When you shoot it in the jungle, it'll stay there and burn on leaves. So that if you
24 fire phosphorous behind somebody and you chase them in the direction of the
25 phosphorous, it might rub off and get on their skin and there's no way to prevent it from
26 burning right through your arm, except for a mud pack. You have to deny it air. So, the
27 use of white phosphorous, sometimes, in support of patrols, in non-populated areas, I
28 believe, was very dreaded by the VC. But again, you had to watch it. If you used white
29 phosphorous in the jungle, you had to pick an area that you didn't have to go through
30 until it could burn itself out after a few hours. So, individual equipment, the boot, the
31 ability to adjust to new light utilities which dried very quickly during the rainstorms.

1 When it rains in I Corps, usually starts around November and months until February, it
2 rains every day and it just rains. I think most Americans have no idea where it just starts
3 raining and it don't stop for ninety days. That has a severe impact on you mentally and
4 operating in that range. No less upon your body by suffering. Your feet begin—a foot
5 immersion type disease. So, to answer your question I didn't see any major tactical
6 except the refinement of processes everywhere. To gain the VC acknowledgement and
7 coordinations and to fire artillery in certain areas was reduced from sometimes hours to
8 minutes, the use of close air and the steps to engage close air and bring them on station in
9 a short period of time. The resilience of the young Marines to be able to trust their
10 weapon systems and their leadership and their knowledge and doctors became their
11 friends. Were these technological? Some of them not, but it was just a process that was
12 beginning to streamline, tighten up, and become greatly supported. The average trooper
13 was the measure of all things could see these processes improving. I think for him that
14 was a great technological advantage.

15 KC: You talked about the toll that the rain can have on you psychologically. It
16 rains for three straight months or six straight months. Whatever it might be. What kind of
17 toll does this constant patrolling, the combat, the terrain and the weather? Looking at how
18 you are dealing with all these difficulties, what kind of toll does this first tour in Vietnam
19 take on your psychologically?

20 CD: Take on me psychologically?

21 KC: Yes, sir.

22 CD: We had spoken about fear in different environments in different parts west of
23 Da Nang. There is a very varied, from rice paddies to an eight-thousand-foot mountain. It
24 is a varied terrain. The ability to operate in these different terrains, reconnaissance is best
25 suited for the mountainous jungle type. Because of the ability to hide and be undetected
26 using the natural elements. Reconnaissance groups did not do well in the populated
27 agricultural maritime plane area because of the people. We used to joke about how we
28 could operate down that. Be neatly disguised as a potted palm? You could not move well
29 among the villagers because they had the dog's system, children, and water buffalo. So,
30 when you did patrolling down there, which the infantry did, it was all combat patrols.
31 And you'd pick up as much intelligence as you can with a combat patrol at night. To

1 operate in those varied terrains presented different types of fear and different types of
2 challenges. Towards the end of my first tour there, we had a short-timers policy. We
3 believe with two weeks to go everybody should be taken off of patrol. You would not
4 send a man on patrol—or let's say thirty days. There were some patrols that were routine,
5 things that had to be done. Never really any contact but had to be done setting X-ray relay
6 post. Send the short timers on those because it's a psychological concern. "Wouldn't this
7 be terrible? The last week I'm hear I get wacked?" So, to take that burden off of
8 somebody by initially Pat's policy by saying, "Find out who has short-timers and make
9 sure the assignment of patrols that so and so is placed on a less challenging roll to fully
10 be able to cope with his psychological concern and his short-timer attitude." So that's
11 how we did it. We used a short-timer policy on putting people on, let's say, lighter duty
12 with thirty days to go. This, I think, was greatly appreciated by all the troops. It was a big
13 of a warning by then. Somebody who had been in-country for six to nine months
14 probably had anywhere from forty to sixty patrols. You know, you can kind of equate
15 those patrols to the life of a B-29 pilot in WWII, I don't know. If you did fifty patrols,
16 every one after that was like a waste, I would imagine. The same way with patrolling,
17 when you started accruing certain numbers like a baseball average. You know, you say,
18 "When is my time?" Everybody knows that if the good Lord wanted you, he was going to
19 come get you. The bullet would go around the rock and find you. So, everybody believed
20 that philosophy and gave them a bit of fearlessness. Whatever they do, the good Lord had
21 plans for them, they were going to live, or they were going to die. So, it wasn't fatalism,
22 it was just accepted, but you could help that the last thirty days by easing that
23 psychological concern a bit by assigning them a less demanding task.

24 KC: Well, that brings up another good topic. What was morale like in the recon
25 units that you served in?

26 CD: Well, in the company I was blessed to serve with Pat Collins, it was
27 extremely high. We had a wonderful First Sergeant Harry Rogers who I had mentioned to
28 you. Three terrific platoon sergeants and Pat, himself, and that story I told you about
29 morale. The company commander draws a line, and he says, "Now, who wants to stay
30 another six months to maintain the integrity of this company?" And everybody available

1 stepped across the line. I think that is the highest accolade to morale I could attribute to
2 the leadership of Pat Collins.

3 KC: You also mentioned in passing, you talked about the Vietnamese and
4 working through their villages. What was your opinion of the Vietnamese when you got
5 there in '65? Did you know about them? Did you think about them? The Vietnamese
6 civilians, that is.

7 CD: Yeah, what were we looking at? Well, when you got into these villages you
8 saw the town, you saw shops, but you never got to go into Da Nang. So, most of our time
9 that the average Marine in my company met a Vietnamese, it was an eighty-year-old
10 woman chewing betel nuts, squatting on the side of the road or working in the paddies.
11 We looked at them as agricultural folks. They had beautiful children; we felt sorry for
12 them. We learned some—we realized that the water buffalo—oh, every rice paddy in I
13 Corps has one corner of a dug out like a six-foot ditch. When the water paddies are full of
14 water, two or three times a year, that ditch is to allow the water buffalo to settle in up to
15 his nose because that's how he cools himself. So, the farmers, over a thousand years of
16 agriculture, dug out that part to allow the water buffalo to cool himself off between tasks.
17 Well, at night four corners of the paddy, you don't know where the water buffalo is. At
18 night on the patrol, somebody fell in that hole. If it was a radio operator, you'd try to find
19 the guy. The water was almost submerged sometimes. Looking at the Vietnamese, they
20 were an ancient society, it was easy to see, but for example, I remember a couple of times
21 we were in a firefight, and somebody will say, "Oh, look, I got one. I found some blood
22 by this hooch." It wasn't blood, it was betel nuts. Somebody was chewing and one of the
23 natives said, "Spit it." And they mistook that for blood, or somebody was bleeding down
24 the trail. But the Vietnamese we met were friendly, but there were the horror stories that
25 pursued, like down at Hill 55. There was a guy who was allowed inside the wire in an
26 infantry company to cut everybody's hair. Then one night they get night attacked. Then
27 the next day they found bodies on the wire a couple of weeks later and one of them was
28 the barber. So, there was a little distrust. We found under every hooch; there was a bomb
29 shelter where they could go from there. Their mud hut, about a foot off the ground, their
30 bamboo hooch, and if there was incoming fire, it was a place to hide. But we tried to
31 avoid them as much as we could, but when we went through a village, we were friendly.

1 They never presented a problem. But when you went to a village that had no young men,
2 what I mean by young men, anybody under the age of twelve. That was a sign that
3 maybe, maybe just maybe, that this village had pro-VC tendencies because of all the
4 young men that had been coopted or Shanghaied by the VC. Oh, and the way they would
5 look at you when you would pass through a village. If there was no friendly wave, then it
6 might have had pro-VC tendencies. These kinds of small factors would grow in your
7 mind. As you exited the village you'd say, "You know, that was a pretty friendly
8 village." or "That village might be trouble in the future." But in general, the US Marines
9 in '65, their only recollection is Vietnamese people is little people with conical hats in
10 pajamas that chew betel nuts and squat on the side of the road. They had no
11 understanding or appreciation for the fifteen hundred years history of the Vietnamese
12 people. The beauty and sophistication that was Saigon, or the Imperial tombs which were
13 waved, or the dynastic system with the Chinese. They had no appreciation or concept of
14 all of that.

15 KC: Now, when your extended tour is coming up, and this is either December
16 of '65 or January of '66, whenever it is, what did you want to do? Were you looking
17 forward to getting out of Vietnam? Were you looking forward to going home? Did you
18 want to stay? What were your feelings and what were your thoughts at the end of this
19 tour?

20 CD: By August of 1965, I realized I'm in the business where initially I was
21 offered a regular commission in Basic School at the PLC program. But I said, "No, I
22 don't want to spend an extra year because I don't know if I'm going to be any good at
23 this." So, by August of '65 I realized, "You know, thanks to the luck of the draw and
24 being able to work with Pat Collins and others, I'm getting pretty good at this." I had
25 been decorated a number of times in early '65. I said, "You know, I have the credentials
26 now. I can walk the walk. I've done it, I've seen it up close whatever to war there is so I
27 can share and teach others. So, I made the decision, I think I want to stay. "So, by August
28 of '65 I signed on and regular commission was offered to me a second time. So, as I'm
29 closing my career I'm looking, "Where can I choose to go next to be able to best
30 influence the action and take advantage of my unique experience in 1965?" When I got
31 back to the States in '66, I was one of the handful of people that had been to Vietnam. I

1 mean, I go to the 2nd Marine Division in North Carolina and few people, only a beginning
2 trickle of people coming back to Vietnam. So, there I was, I'm now a first lieutenant and
3 I was assigned a company. I had some ribbons on my chest and personal decoration. So,
4 people gave me a little deference. I spoke with a little bit of authority. People wanted to
5 hear what I had to say, maybe I could help them. So that's the kind of feeling I had and I
6 was delighted. Except, North Carolina back then, I was a single guy, and it was very
7 difficult. I liked to date women, but it was difficult to get a date. Then by that time, too, I
8 had two Caribbean tours. I went on two floats with infantry battalions into the Caribbean.

9 KC: And when was this, in '66?

10 CD: Let's see, July all the way through September of 1956, I lived in the
11 Caribbean on cruises. We would send a battalion, and we would visit the Panama Canal,
12 the Panama jungle schools, and we would be based on the island of Vieques. Half of
13 Vieques used to be a US bombing range. The other half of Vieques was basically a
14 Marine camp and had one town, Isabel Segundo. We used to call it "the town that was
15 too tough to die." So, we would spend time doing amphibious landings, practicing
16 amphibious doctrinal techniques, and sailing at ports of call as sort of a Marine
17 contingency battalion. We embarked on an LPH, landing platform helicopter, a big
18 carrier, most of the summer of '66.

19 KC: All right, now let me take you back a little bit. You leave Vietnam, you get
20 back in the States, and I guess you go to the 2nd Marine Division, you say, in North
21 Carolina, and this is early 1966.

22 CD: Right.

23 KC: What position did you hold? What were your duties going to be here?

24 CD: Ironically, I was assigned to 2nd Reconnaissance Battalion. I commanded two
25 companies: Company A—Company B, and then Company A. It was a skeletal
26 organization. It did not have the full complement of troops. It was probably operating at
27 about eighty percent of a table of organization as opposed to 3rd Recon that was probably
28 operating at about one hundred percent. So, my job as a young company commander as
29 the first lieutenant to train the second lieutenants. Sort of in the mode or the footsteps of
30 how Pat Collins would have done it.

1 KC: So, did you see your job as one in which you were to get the 2nd Battalion,
2 these companies in the 2nd Battalion in Vietnam ready shape?

3 CD: As best you could. You see, back then, too, in the 2nd Marine Division, even
4 2nd Reconnaissance Battalion, every day you probably didn't have thirty percent of your
5 troops. They had to go to the rifle range, they had to perform mess duty, they had to
6 perform camp guard duty. So administrative tasks, every day during that time, still to this
7 day, when operational units are in garrison, they suffer drawdown. You have to put
8 people on mess duty. People have to go for eye inspections, medical and family type
9 things. So, a young company commander or an infantry reconnaissance longs for the day
10 when he can get his unit away from that camp out in the field where he has unit integrity
11 or maybe has ninety percent of his troops available to do things that the company needs
12 to do. So, I had two skeletal companies and the operational draw down that plagues every
13 unit. Then I did that until about July. And then, they needed a reconnaissance platoon to
14 go with 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines as part of a battalion landing team. Every battalion
15 landing team has one reconnaissance platoon. So, a battalion commander gentleman
16 named Harold Keizer, also a Navy Cross winner, said, "I think you ought to go on that
17 cruise, to make sure that we hold up our end and are representative to the battalion. So
18 that's what got me out of the company commander business. Back down to a platoon
19 commander, at least for that summer with the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines.

20 KC: How did you adjust to life in North Carolina with the 2nd Division as a peace
21 time officer—not a peace time officer but someone serving stateside while war was going
22 on having been on the war?

23 CD: Even by '66, I could see it was going to go on. I knew I was going back.

24 KC: You knew that at that time? You already knew?

25 CD: Yeah, I knew in early '66 that this was. And given the size of the buildup and
26 the investment the United States was making, plus studying the political dynamics and
27 the press on TV and in my readings, I just knew I was going back for—I'd be in the first
28 wave of people going back for their second tour. I wanted to be the most professional
29 Marine I'm going to be while I'm in the States and also enjoy myself and get ready for
30 whatever my second tour might have brought me.

1 KC: I read yesterday, a short little article. I don't know if it was from a book or a
2 magazine or what it was from. I can't even tell you who the author of it was. I didn't see
3 the name of the author, but there was a story about a First Lieutenant Carmine
4 DelGrosso, who had taken an unauthorized leave for a very short period of time and
5 nearly had himself in a little bit of trouble. Do you recall anything about that?

6 CD: Yeah. (Laughing)

7 KC: (Laughing) Do you mind telling me that story?

8 CD: You know, if you punch my name into google, I think that story comes up.

9 KC: It comes up first, in fact. That's how I found it.

10 CD: I know who wrote it. I know him. I thought he took some liberties with all of
11 that. It went like this, long story short. Again, I was a single guy and to go from Camp
12 Lejeune on Friday, I enjoyed liberty in New York City. So, to drive all the way home and
13 then have to be back by six o'clock Monday morning, I had a succession of three
14 battalion commanders, two of which had Navy Crosses. The first one was terrific, the
15 second one was so-so, but the third guy, his nickname was Black Jack. And he told me on
16 a Friday, you know, I said, "Look, I haven't been on liberty. I've been in the Caribbean.
17 I'd like to go on leave." "No, you can't go." I said, "Well look, I'm going to go, Colonel,
18 I'll see you. I'll be back Monday morning, six-thirty." I think I was an hour late and he
19 was going to read me the Riot Act and then he authored that article saying I was going to
20 be court martialed and all that sort of stuff. It never really got to that extreme, but I was
21 severely chastised. You know, in my heart I wanted to tell them, but I couldn't say so.
22 What are you going to do, shave my head and send me back to Vietnam?

23 KC: Yeah, I thought that was entertaining. (Laughing)

24 CD: So, I thought I deserved an extra day. The troops were in good hands, and
25 nobody suffered. I know we thought we needed a weekend in New York, that's all.

26 KC: Right, well I think that's a good point to stop there for today, Colonel.

Interview with Carmine DelGrosso
Session [3] of [6]
Date: 25 October 2010

1 Kelly Crager: This is Kelly Crager continuing an oral history interview with
2 Colonel Carmine DelGrosso. Today is October 25, 2010, I am in Lubbock, Texas, on the
3 campus of Texas Tech University and the Colonel is joining me by telephone from his
4 home in San Clemente, California. All right, Colonel, off the record a moment ago you
5 were discussing this Caribbean cruise that you were a part of. It was part of the battalion
6 landing team that was assigned to the Caribbean. Tell me about that time you spent there
7 in the Caribbean.

8 Carmine DelGrosso: Right. Caribbean cruise was part of a normal cycle for the 9th
9 Infantry Battalion stationed at Camp Lejeune as part of the 2nd Marine Division during
10 the '65-'66 timeframe. What it consisted of is the Marine force battalion to include an
11 aviation squadron in the form of a battalion landing team. That includes a reconnaissance
12 platoon. I had taken one of those platoons. It was normally a four-month cruise that set
13 sail for Morehead City, North Carolina, about forty miles north of Camp Lejeune. With
14 the primary infantry battalion embarked on the landing platform helicopter, an LPH. We
15 would sail down to the Caribbean with the primary ports of call built around Vieques
16 Island, which was an island just east of Roosevelt Roads, Puerto Rico, about thirty miles.
17 The entire island, the one small civilian sector, was a US naval base. Half the island was
18 a US Navy bombing range. See, the Navy would sail down to Vieques because it was the
19 last opportunity it had to fire all its weapons and long-range weapons to include
20 battleships, like the *Wisconsin*. Before it would sail east for assignments in the
21 Mediterranean. The other half of the island was built around Camp Garcia, which was a
22 Marine engineering camp. The battalions would come ashore for a few days and do fire
23 and maneuver exercises and then reembark, again, having tested their weapons and then
24 further sailing onto often Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, where we would put in for two or three
25 days and make use of the land there in Guantanamo Bay for exercise maneuvers. Also,
26 visit with Marine colleagues. At the same time, this battalion was normally the United
27 States maintained a Marine infantry battalion, also from Camp Lejeune also at
28 Guantanamo Bay to reinforce the fences and patrol the 125-mile perimeter over the entire

1 base on both the leeward and windward sides of Guantanamo Bay. So, there were
2 probably eight hundred Marines ashore at Guantanamo Bay for probably a four-month
3 tour and then they would rotate back to Camp Lejeune. After Guantanamo Bay we would
4 set sail off for the Panama and the United States would land on the east side of the
5 Panama Canal. Select companies from the rifle battalion would participate in the US
6 Army's jungle school, located in the United States controlled Panama Canal. It was
7 excellent training when the entire battalion would break down to squad size and then
8 once it's in the jungle, on individual survival skills, compass marches, navigating in the
9 jungle for up to ten days. So, the entire battalion cohesively could participate at the squad
10 level in their training. We would then reembark—oh, then we would go on liberty, on the
11 west side over Panama City by train and be recovered by train after a day or two days in
12 Panama City. Get back, reembark on the east coast of Panama and set sail for other places
13 in the Caribbean. Depending on the battalion four-month cruise, and in my case in June
14 of '66, we went to Panama, Guantanamo Bay, and San Juan. It was very worthwhile in
15 the sense that many of the troops then, by June of '66 had not yet been to Vietnam. So,
16 for them to get out and work their combined arms and reinforce their squad training and
17 identity and allow platoon company commanders and the battalion commanders and staff
18 to exercise those troops, made for a good unit cohesiveness, comradery, and was a great
19 step to get troops ready to follow-on assignments in Vietnam.

20 KC: Which is something, obviously, that the Marines needed, based on your
21 experience there already.

22 CD: That they hated?

23 KC: No, that they needed.

24 CD: Oh, basically I think warfare has been this way for two thousand years. When
25 a company is in garrison, as a unit, their tactical integrity is often marginalized by
26 garrison assignments. For example, the camp guard. Somebody has to do the cooking, so
27 you have mess duty. There's people all the time on temporary additional duty or going to
28 school. There were times, particularly in 1966, where a company commander would go
29 out to see his company and what was available may have been as low as 30 percent of the
30 troops. So, any great plans about going to the field are always compromised by garrison
31 down commands. So, the joy of being able to get away from Camp Lejeune with your

1 rifle company or your battalion having operating levels of 85-90 percent of the troops
2 available is a good thing. You could do what was necessary because you had to choose
3 strength and presence to accomplish that. Since there were so many troops there, say, 90
4 percent while afloat or assigned away from Camp Lejeune, you could build integrity, you
5 could build a squad communications around each other and basically special trust in
6 confidence to each other.

7 KC: While you were on this float did you—

8 CD: By the way, sometimes a division would be so desperate, they would tell a
9 battalion, “We’re going to designate you,” for example, “3rd Battalion, 6th Marines. In a
10 regiment of the 6th Marines, you’re going to do a crappy little job that is demanded of the
11 regiment so at least we can maintain some integrity in the other two battalions.” It’s a
12 heck of a way to operate, but when one third of a regiment has to pick up all the junk
13 from the camp guard, police. Whatever it took, the division demands the working parties
14 you would have to provide. You would basically have to lose your tactical integrity
15 depending on the nature on how long you had that assignment. Usually, it was a month or
16 six weeks. Keep in mind, at the same time, too, a battalion that was about to go afloat,
17 you had to maintain, and it was very important that you maintained their personal
18 integrity that you didn’t treat them as a treadmill. So that the person you trained would
19 say twelve weeks prior to deployment with the same guy twelve weeks later that got on
20 the ship. You could not continually train from squad through company to battalion level
21 and then have this routine drawdown because of administrative constraints or
22 prohibitions or extracurricular activities. You had to get eight hundred Marines that were
23 not going to be reenlisted, not going to get out of the Marine Corps to attain eight
24 hundred people and keep them together in a pipeline is no easy task for division
25 command and personal people to match—mix and match that combination. Once people
26 are there, it’s usually twelve weeks before afloat that those people are locked down in
27 their battalion that allows them, as a whole, perform they all go through squad level
28 training together. All through platoon, all through company training. So that you sail as a
29 unit and then stay together in the Caribbean or whatever, for the duration up to six
30 months. It’s a thing of beauty not easily attainable. So, every infantry battalion, even in

1 base time, is constantly nipped at by administrative drawdowns which is fatal to building
2 unit integrity in the tactical sense.

3 KC: While you were on this cruise in the Caribbean, did you have any chance to
4 interact with any of the native population, the citizens of the countries you visited?

5 CD: Oh, absolutely. You know, the old “join the Navy and see the world?” That
6 applies to the Marine Corps, too. The troop particularly enjoyed Panama. One of the
7 reasons the troops enjoyed certain places, and I’ve seen this in other parts of the world.
8 For example, in the Far East when we go to Hong Kong, it was a beautiful place, but
9 everything was so expensive. What the troops enjoyed most was the ability to go to the
10 Philippines where beer was cheap and so it was the opportunity to meet women and, you
11 know, a twenty-dollar bill would go a very, very long way. The same applied to the
12 Caribbean. The troops enjoyed Panama because at the cost of living, the price of beer, the
13 cost of transportation and getting around and getting food. So, they really enjoyed going
14 into Panama City for three days and taking the train across from Colon, the port on the
15 east coast of the Panama Canal. Vieques was tough. There was nothing there except beer
16 and the beach. They enjoyed San Juan, going into San Juan and stopping in “Gitmo”
17 (Naval Station Guantanamo Bay) was of historical interest and there was a slop shoot
18 there, but there were no women. No ability to interact with the Cubans. Although you
19 could watch the Cubans come and go through the fence every day for work. The troops
20 thought that was historically interesting. The base was staffed by Cubans that every day,
21 had to exit the base, and lived in the nearest town on the other side of the fences.

22 KC: You were talking earlier before we started the recording, about seeing the
23 troops who are guarding the fence or guarding this very tenuous border. Tell me about
24 that. Tell me about the conditions there.

25 CD: I remember now, in Guantanamo Bay there were certain beaches that the
26 troops could use. But if you took your troops to the beach you had to register with the
27 provost marshal. The standard rule back then was, if anybody saw bubbles in the water,
28 the standard operating procedure was to drop a hand grenade on the bubbles because we
29 were always concerned about infiltrators through the leeward side into Guantanamo Bay.
30 Often, a battalion, as part of its four-month deployment, would be called upon to help
31 man the fences at Gitmo. Now, there was an entire Marine battalion. 2/9 of the 2nd

1 Marine Division, one was afloat, and one was in Gitmo, reinforcing the perimeter. Often,
2 these troops from Camp Lejeune, because of the way life works out, had not been to
3 Vietnam yet. So, darkness for them was not quite their friend and they were a little
4 nervous for Cuban infiltrators and the Cubans would get quite close to the fence and
5 some of the guard towers and would throw rocks. So, we constantly at night had rock
6 throwing incidents with the Cubans. I had heard a story once, but I had never seen it. A
7 one rifle company who had supposedly erected a catapult and would be throwing rocks
8 back and forth with the Cubans. Anything to keep up morale while also doing your job.
9 Remember, much of Gitmo was very heavily mined, but still, the Cubans would try to
10 infiltrate. You don't know whether that was out of a desire to reach US territory or just to
11 harass people assigned to guard duty on defense. But at night, Gitmo was a busy place in
12 the summer of 1966 with lots and lots of incidents along the fence. The rules were, too, if
13 there was somebody infiltrating over the fence and the Marines had live ammunition, that
14 is even the visiting Marines who were sent to reinforce the fence. Now, if you shot one,
15 make sure that the body fell over into US property so that you could claim that that was
16 infiltration of the United States property. There were often instances when somebody was
17 shot and fell back over the fence, back into Cuban territory. Which that was frowned
18 upon because that meant the other side could make great political hay about, "Well, you
19 shot a person who was on the fence." There was even a cherry picker there on standby
20 that if a body was shot on the fence, the cherry picker could be rushed out. There was lots
21 of fence, probably sixteen miles of fence to recover the body other side if there was a
22 shooting incident on the fence.

23 KC: What was the attitude of the citizens of the Caribbean toward the Americans
24 in general and the Marines in particular?

25 CD: There was no animosity. The US Marines were welcome. First of all, it was
26 an economic injection into the local culture. Whether it was in Isabel Segundo, the little
27 town on Vieques, where back then you could buy a Pepsi Cola bottle full of rum with no
28 cap and you'd have to walk around with your finger in it because it was a message from
29 God that if there was no cap on it, you had to finish the bottle. You could buy a full bottle
30 of rum back then for ten cents. So, there were no animosity with the locals outside of
31 maybe a couple Marines got a little rowdy in the bar but buy paying whatever the

1 breakage was in the bar to chairs or tables. Life went on and the Marines were an integral
2 part of the economic life of that town. The same way in Panama. When they completed
3 the jungle school, we would load the entire company reinforced of almost three hundred
4 Marines to take the train right across Panama. The Marines would give them liberty and
5 only had to check in once a day. After three days they'd party around Panama City, never
6 any problems. We would match a number of Marine officers as part of the shore patrol
7 alongside the Guardia Nacional, which was the Panamanian Army. We would walk the
8 streets of Panama City in tandem with our Canadian counterparts. We never had a
9 problem with the Marines. We would go into San Juan the same way. Come over from
10 Vieques by LST, it was about a four-hour ride, to Roosevelt Road. Take taxi cabs—you'd
11 see a hundred taxis out there picking up two or three Marines and taking them across the
12 island over to San Juan, spend three days in San Juan. No incidents, again, working with
13 the local authorities. So, there was no political animosity in any of the liberty spots with
14 the local personnel. They were not resented. There was no communist feeling or Cuban
15 sympathizers or problems with Venezuela that would interfere with the normal process of
16 liberty and the Marines getting a little time off with a couple of beers with their friends.
17 Then again, seeing parts of the world that would have been denied to them if they had
18 been in another occupation.

19 KC: Now, when your time on this cruise comes to an end, are you disappointed
20 that it's over and that you have to go back to the States to another assignment or are you
21 glad to get off the ship?

22 CD: That's an excellent question. Nobody likes the ship because, let us say for
23 example, I'll give you a little story—in the officers' mess, you go on the ship for thirty
24 days, you buy into the officers' mess as a junior Marine Corps officer. The quality of the
25 food is not that great. A lot of hot dogs and bug juice and that sort of stuff. But when the
26 Marines get off because it's the same mess, the ship's crew, and the remaining ship's
27 crew eat very well on the Marine money. So, if I buy into the mess for thirty days, they
28 scrimp for twenty days and then when I get off the ship, they eat steak for ten days. That
29 process was somewhat resented. Now the troops, they always ate pretty good, no
30 problem. But everybody enjoyed the cruise. It was always a new adventure, a new port of
31 call. You're the same buddies so you develop deep ties among those people. At the end of

1 all cruises—please keep in mind at that time in 1966, married Marines were only
2 probably ten percent of the force. There was an old saying, “If the Marine Corps wanted
3 you to have a wife below the rank of sergeant, they would have issued you one.” So,
4 below the rank of sergeant there were not many married Marines. Today’s Marine Corps,
5 probably I would suspect has eighty percent of battalion below the rank of sergeant is
6 married. When you see a Marine battalion when they’re about to go afloat in today’s
7 Marine Corps, that parking lot where they have to find areas to park a thousand cars. All
8 the troops have to leave their automobiles somewhere that is safe in that area guarded by
9 the, again, regimental staff that provides the people. Back in ‘66, where the Marine rifle
10 platoon was, one officer, forty-six enlisted and the Navy corpsman, there were maybe
11 only two or three automobiles in that whole platoon. They were usually owned by
12 somebody who had a couple of bucks, a rich kid. So, when the Marines were afloat and
13 they weren’t married and they did come back, their regrets were, “I will have to go back
14 to routine camp life.” A lot of shitty little jobs. But at least those who were married had
15 the opportunity to see their families. You know, four months away from your family in
16 the Caribbean and you’re supposed to be on a state-side tour. It’s detrimental, to a degree,
17 sometimes often, a family relationship. Sort of like there’s a small portion that looks
18 forward to revisiting their families. For the average young, I remember back then the
19 average Marine was about nineteen years of age. They looked forward to what would be
20 their next assignment when they got back to Camp Lejeune because they knew that
21 battalion probably would suffer degradation. Many of the troops would go on for addition
22 of duties, on new assignments, had been in that battalion for two years and were starting
23 to move to another assignment whether in the fleet Marine forces or outside like
24 recruiting at a Marine Corps recruit depot or whatever. So, everybody knew there would
25 be some sort of a degradation to the battalion as they knew it doing their four-month
26 experiences.

27 KC: You bring up a question that comes to my mind. You’re onboard ship or on
28 this cruise for four months. It’s not always onboard ship, but what was the relationship
29 like between the Marines and the sailors on these ships?

30 CD: It’s a broad question. I think it fits the traditional response; there was a little
31 friction. The Marines would look at the Navy and say, “What kind of life would you

1 have? Do you have to chip paint all day long?” There used to be an old saying, “If it
2 don’t move, paint it. If it moves, salute it.” You know, we used to look at Navy life and
3 say, “Gee, why would somebody sign up for that?” Where the Marines you knew, even
4 the Navy would go to ports of call, it was sort of—even then in the Navy, too, even in the
5 Caribbean, the sailors spend so much time down below deck that they had pale. They
6 didn’t have any tan or complexion. The Marines just did not like that type of a lifestyle.
7 But there was no major frictions. They looked at us to be transported. We looked at them
8 as just sort of bus drivers. That’s the way it went. During your time on the ship, you made
9 the best of it. Sometimes on an LPH, a landing platform helicopter. On the carrier deck,
10 the second deck where they kept all the Marine helicopters, at night there would be a
11 movie. The Marines looked forward to the movie. You couldn’t drink in transit to the
12 next port. So, life was really simple. Clean your weapons, do calisthenics up on the flight
13 deck, and a nightly movie. A little funny story, I remember when one night, the funniest
14 thing I think I ever seen. As the movie was announced every night it was called the eight
15 o’clock reports. And the eight o’clock reports were over the loudspeaker. You could hear
16 different sections in the ship would report in that everything was safe and secure. And
17 then a boatswain’s mate would announce what the night’s movie was, so the Marines
18 would know what the movie was. One night the boatswain—to this day I think he never
19 realized, he said, “Tonight’s movie is, “Henry V-I-I-I.” (Pronounced every letter of VIII)
20 So, you know, you had that kind of a jocularly you laugh a little on ship. But there was
21 no air conditioning back then either except maybe in the medical ward. But the troops
22 slept sometimes on an LPH, seven decks high. You have to climb up and during it was
23 kind of tough in the Caribbean. The weather now, the fringes would try to sail away from
24 it, but a hurricane and I remember being on the fringes when hurricane season starts in
25 August. So, in the post-August time of year, the probabilities are running into some pretty
26 rough weather in the Caribbean grow exponentially. To be in some pretty rough weather
27 where troops get seasick in their bunks. I had one first sergeant that was running around
28 giving a lot of the troops—the process was, you would stay in your bunk with your
29 helmet on and boots on. A lot of troops would get seasick and the first sergeant would run
30 around and give them anti-seasick pills. It was basically a placebo. The troops thought it
31 was—it helped many of them, but it was just an aspirin. So, life on the ship could be

1 discomforting particularly in tough weather and the troops, they just played cards,
2 cleaned their weapons, and got ready for the next port call. You ran a lot of classes on the
3 ship. You would see your troops maybe two or three hours a day where you would hold
4 class on all kinds of subjects from personal hygiene through law classes. So, a little dull
5 on the ships for the troops, but it was a new experience, and they'd walk all over the ship.
6 Now, that was on a bigger one, like an LPH, but some of these auxiliary ships, usually an
7 amphibious ready group, had three ships built around the LPH with the Marine embarked
8 battalion. It was probably a thousand people. Plus, a five-hundred-man Marine helicopter
9 squadron. On the auxiliary ships, like an AKA (attack cargo ships) or an APA (auxiliary
10 personal, attack ship), was embarked part of the battalion's artillery supply and logistics.
11 The life on a smaller ship was a little tougher. It didn't have the big movie every night
12 and it was a little more cramped, which is a tougher ride than a bigger ship. They
13 probably ate a little better, but that's the advantage. The good news being in the
14 Caribbean, you never went more than ten days a float where you ran into some other port
15 of call.

16 KC: All right, you finish your four-month Caribbean cruise. What's your next
17 stop? You come back to the US; you come back to North Carolina. What's your next
18 stop?

19 CD: Well, the next stop is depending on where—assignment to the 2nd Marine
20 Division, at that time, was minimal of two years, possibly three. So, in the course of two
21 years or three, depending on which battalion you went to. Say, you just went to a
22 battalion that just came back from the Caribbean, and you were at the beginning of the
23 lock on cycle to start the process again to build up to deploy within the next six months.
24 It could be Med Cruise. You would go and deploy to the Mediterranean and sail from
25 North Carolina, hit many, many ports of call in the Mediterranean and that was normally
26 six months. At all times, the United States kept the battalion in the Mediterranean for six
27 months and also, you had to have one battalion getting ready to go. So that battalion that
28 sailed out of the Mediterranean was met by—usually it rode to Spain, an oncoming
29 battalion that was headed into the mess for six months where the ports of call were varied
30 everything from Rhodes to Venice you would get off and make six or eight landings in
31 Turkey, Italy, North Africa, and Spain itself. Many troops enjoyed that cruise because

1 they really got to see a good chunk of Europe and Africa and also as Far East as Turkey
2 in the Bosphorus for six-month Med Cruise really welded a battalion together. They
3 knew who they were. Their weapons, they got to train together, and combat wise, that
4 was a first-rate battalion ready for combat and deployment and fully trained. At the same
5 time, we had this Caribbean operation. So, depending on when you go to Camp Lejeune,
6 in the two-to-three-year process you could expect at least one, six-month Med
7 deployment and probably two Caribbean deployments in the course of three years. Now,
8 think about that. At max that's about fourteen months afloat from North Carolina on a
9 three-year state-side tour between Vietnam. So that didn't leave much time for family and
10 other things.

11 KC: Right, right.

12 CD: When you came back from that process out of the 2nd Marine Division and
13 you were transferred, you would go from one of the three Marine Corps special services
14 if you were enlisted, which is the drill field, recruiting duty, or even Marine Security
15 Guard Battalion with all the embassies worldwide. You would go onto Headquarters
16 Marine Corps or station somewhere else. So, troops, depending on their MOS, military
17 occupational specialty, would be transferred from sort of, you might say, a Class A billet
18 which was Fleet Marine Forces to a B billet that is shore duty elsewhere recruiting, the
19 drill fields, headquarters, and Marine Corps. You then went from B billet and then back
20 to an A billet which was Fleet Marine Forces. Rarely at that time, because of the needs of
21 the Marine Corps, was somebody ever assigned from a B billet to a B billet. To go from
22 recruiting to the drill field. That kept you away from your occupational specialty,
23 particularly infantry for up to five or six years. When you would come back from that
24 process, you were completely out of it. You had to be completely retrained. Of course,
25 new weapons and new tactics and so on.

26 KC: What about you? You come back from the Caribbean; you go back to the 2nd
27 Division. What is your new position? Where are you going? What are you going to be
28 doing?

29 CD: Again, I had been eighteen—well, almost two years in the Fleet Marine
30 Forces in the 3rd Marine Division, plus extending with the 9th Marine Expeditionary
31 Brigade. Then I've got a year in the 2nd Marine Division and then the time with Carib

1 Cruises I also went to jump school, I went to scuba school in Key West, Florida, and
2 jump school with the US Army in Fort Benning, Georgia. So, for a Marine lieutenant,
3 that's all I've known now. Since I got out of Basic School in June of 1963, it's now mid-
4 1966 so for three years all I've known is the Fleet Marine Forces. I don't know another
5 part of the Marine Corps. I'm also a single guy at Camp Lejeune. I would like to get out
6 of Camp Lejeune to meet some women.

7 KC: You mentioned that before.

8 CD: So, the opportunity came up to go to language school. I went to see my
9 monitor and I took the language aptitude test, and I qualified for Chinese. I said, "Wow,
10 that sounds pretty sexy." So, there I find myself in January 1967, in the classroom
11 studying Mandarin Chinese in Washington, D.C., for forty-seven weeks. That's six hours
12 a day with four guys in my class. So, you can't really fake a hangover. So, I studied
13 Chinese for five hours a day at a place called, The Institute of Modern Languages. Now,
14 back then the Defense Language Institute was broken into West Coast and East Coast.
15 The Defense Language Institute on the East Coast was in Anacostia, Washington. But it
16 was so flooded with people learning Vietnamese and other languages, many students
17 were farmed out on subcontractor to language schools in the Washington, D.C., area. I
18 was assigned to a place called The Institute of Modern Languages up in Northwest
19 Washington, D.C., It was in civilian clothes, five hours a day, and that's all I did. I
20 reported every morning at eight o'clock and studied Chinese until about two. Ten-minute
21 breaks, five straight hours to go to lunch and all that nonsense. Then I went home, and I
22 had an apartment in Washington, and I studied my Mandarin Chinese and worked on my
23 characters and everything else for a year.

24 KC: Now, why did you choose language? Was it something you had an ear for?
25 Was it something you wanted?

26 CD: That's a good question. I remember way back in February 1965, I was
27 assigned on an exercise, a platoon-sized—a reconnaissance platoon and was dispatched
28 from Okinawa to Taiwan. I was matched with the Chinese marines. I had an opposite
29 number, a lieutenant and he had twenty-two Chinese marines. We operated from the very
30 tip of the bottom of the island of Taiwan, north for a hundred miles. My two lance
31 corporals worked for his two corporals. His two corporals worked for my two corporals.

1 So, there we were, two platoons. The only one who spoke English was the Chinese
2 platoon commander. All the rest of us did not speak any Mandarin. I found that a
3 fascinating experience where you got to work with a lot of arm and hand signals. Live off
4 the land, work as a four-man team. Two of which were foreigners who spoke no English.
5 It was some pretty rugged terrain. It had about a dozen types of hemotoxic and neurotoxic
6 snakes, exotic animals, thick jungle rainforests. Very reminiscent of what I would go
7 through in Panama in 1966. You know, I went on that operation for three weeks and I
8 developed an appreciation of the Chinese government on Taiwan. The build up to that,
9 we learned a number of Chinese characters, memorized sayings, "Thank you, and
10 appreciate it." Probably each of the Marines learned a hundred-word vocabulary that if
11 they inserted into dialogue at the right time, maybe it would work and be helpful to them.
12 So, in a short period of time for two-week operations in three weeks, I got the taste of a
13 little Asiatic society up close. When the opportunity came to study language moving
14 forward two years later I said, "Maybe I have the ability and the scores to do it. To
15 participate and learn more about Asia through the Chinese language." That's how I
16 backed into Mandarin Chinese.

17 KC: Interesting.

18 CD: And then the beauty of it is that this is something very hard. When people go
19 to language school, you would think that the government made an investment that they
20 would actually go to the country or into a follow-on assignment where they got to use
21 that language in some capacity. That is rare, that doesn't happen. Many people are sent to
22 language school to fill quotas because you use it or lose it. The Marine Corps is given so
23 many quotas a year in different languages. I actually got assigned to the country. I was
24 assigned as part of the Military Assistance Advisory Group, known as the MAAG. I was
25 assigned to MAAG China in 1968.

26 KC: First off let me ask you, how well did you do in the language courses? Were
27 you a success? Was it difficult for you? How well did you do?

28 CD: I did well enough. I had a big aptitude, maybe it goes back to my Jesuit
29 education. As an undergraduate I had six years of Latin and two years of Greek. I knew
30 enough French to be dangerous.

31 KC: (Laughs)

1 CD: To be assigned in 1968 as one of four team advisors assigned to the Chinese
2 marines—the Chinese marines at that time were the second largest marine corps in the
3 world. There were some fifty thousand of them located in southern Taiwan near the port
4 city of Kaohsiung which was a million people back then. And on the outskirts of
5 Kaohsiung was a place called Tsoying, T-S-O-Y-I-N-G. That was the home of the
6 Chinese marines. There were fourteen advisors, I was the junior guy as a captain. I was
7 the only single guy. Ironically, the only one that spoke a little Chinese. So, I didn't live in
8 a compound with the other officers. I lived in a town with the Chinese people. I lived in
9 the city of Kaohsiung for two and a half years. So came five o'clock every day in my job,
10 I was immersed back into a Chinese Mandarin environment. You either spoke or you
11 didn't eat. So, I got to be somewhat proficient in the language and accustomed to it and
12 even some of the sub-dialects of Taiwanese. But the Chinese Marines were an interesting
13 institution. There were two full divisions, very much structured like the US Marine
14 Corps. One division was on the island of Taiwan in the Kaohsiung area and the other
15 division was out on the Pescadores, the Penghu Island, which were halfway between
16 Taiwan and the mainland. An entire division of twenty thousand marines. Strategically, if
17 the communists had invaded, there would have been a bypass. But that's the way—
18 Chiang Kai-shek was alive then, too. He actually ran a party every May and he would
19 invite the entire advisory course. I actually met Chiang Kai-shek back then.

20 KC: Is that right? Describe that meeting for me.

21 CD: Oh, I found the Gimo interesting. That's a good story later. I actually went to
22 his funeral. I went in my greens, and I put on a black armband as respect. When I got to
23 the lines for his funeral, which were around the block, they immediately saw me as a
24 foreign soldier, and I got rushed to the front of the line unwittingly. So, I went in there
25 and I did what's called Jugong. I stood in front of the casket, and I bowed three times.
26 Well, wouldn't you know it, that hits the TV. So now, every hour, and they have three
27 days of national mourning. Every hour for three days, there's Del Grosso bowing three
28 times in my greens. The sub caption underneath is, "Foreign soldiers come to pay respect
29 to the Gimo." Needless to say, everybody on that island who was in the military advisory
30 group got to know my face and I was the bud of many jokes for a long time thereafter.

31 KC: I'm sure that you were. (Laughing)

1 CD: For me, as a young man at that time, I was twenty-four years old assigned to
2 a foreign country for three years. Speaking Mandarin on a daily basis. My role was an
3 infantry advisor and a military assistance programmer. Which I'll explain in a minute. I
4 also had a function; I was the ground reconnaissance. I was assigned to help them and
5 each division had a reconnaissance battalion of probably about eight hundred Chinese
6 marines. So, there were about fifteen hundred Chinese marines in that business. One of
7 my roles which explained to them some of my types of training that we were going in
8 United States reconnaissance units from jumping out airplanes trying to get to the
9 Chinese army jump school to allow so many Chinese marines a year to get on quota.
10 Also, swimming underwater and doing basically patrolling. Long range and short-range
11 patrolling. I enjoyed that immensely, plus I was treated, I had a superior Marine Corps
12 colonel, and I was just a captain. Then after that was the colonel, lieutenant colonel, all
13 the rest of the majors and myself and another guy were captains. I was the only single
14 guy. So, my life in liberty were pretty good. At night, I would have no problem. Of
15 course, at that time in southern Taiwan, there was a curfew every evening. They were
16 armed troops with bayonets in the streets after eleven at night. The whole interior of
17 Taiwan was off limits to many people because of the governments fear of infiltration by
18 Chinese communist guerillas up into the highlands and coming across from the mainland
19 by fishing boat. So, at night it was sort of martial law. That forced the point when I often
20 get stopped at these roadblocks. I would have a lot of trouble with the roadblocks or
21 speaking the language which, after exasperation, I went to the chief of the staff of the
22 Chinese Marine Corps, General Yuan Guozheng, and explained the situation. He said,
23 "Give me thirty pictures of yourself, little three by threes." He said, "Wait four days."
24 After that at night, I could drive around and ran into a roadblock, and somebody was
25 sticking a bayonet in the window. I saw the guy with the clipboard turn the page and
26 there's my picture. That would allow me to go through the roadblocks. So that's how I
27 was able to navigate at night getting home from a late-night assignment at work or in the
28 field. But it was a delightful time to be in Taiwan. Of course, for those people, their
29 mission, again, was the mainland and they had so many perceptions of the mainland. The
30 whole island was near a martial law footing for that period of time. I also often got to
31 visit out to the Penghu Islands and see our advisory effort for the 1st Marine Division at

1 that time. Those divisions out on the Pescadores, they would rotate every two years. But
2 one of my primary roles, too, was of interest and this leads into my second tour in
3 Vietnam. One of my roles was, for years, we had to buying Chinese and Korean
4 government, their forces. Military assistance programming where we would designate
5 their tables of equipment and we would fill those tables of equipment with US hand-me-
6 down equipment or brand-new equipment to outfit the entire Korean and Chinese Marine
7 Corps, took years. Every year they would have so much dollars, which would be turned
8 into a priorities list of what they could buy and they couldn't buy. Again, this was a way
9 that American equipment because if we ever had to work with those people, they would
10 have the same equipment, same ammunition, and there was great joy in having
11 commonality of equipment when you're fighting with an ally, which even holds today.
12 So, for the United States to take much of their older equipment and provide it through
13 military assistance to a host nation and surest commonality. There was another concept
14 that, as nations would begin to reach economic status, back then, Taiwan was not a very
15 rich country nor Korea. The idea being, if those people had US inventory, when they
16 finally did get money, they would be able to transition from openly given free military
17 assistance equipment to purchase foreign military sales. So now, this becomes big
18 business, and you could see what Taiwan is today and Korea. That by the initial offerings
19 of military assistance equipment back in the sixties and probably in the seventies,
20 countries moved from military assistants into foreign military sales. There was a cutoff
21 point that the United States, and the host company would determine. "We no longer need
22 US military assistance, but rather as a show of good faith, we will continue to buy our
23 equipment and supplies in the future." But what that meant for the United States was
24 good business. That meant that that host nation would continue to buy American. So,
25 back in '68, my role was to basically figure out what equipment the Chinese marines
26 needed in what priority order, in what quantities, and to make sure they did not ask what
27 things could not be given to them because the covenant was—and this is very difficult for
28 the Marine Corps which is an offensive machine. Our mission on Taiwan, and still is to
29 this day, the United States is committed to the defense of Taiwan not to help that
30 government retake the mainland. That was always the rub, the political friction was on
31 that very concept of offense versus defense. So, my role in '68-'69 was to assist in

1 military assistance advisory to provide equipment, particularly, trucks and vehicles, to the
2 Chinese marines. Now, this is where, if you can hold that for a minute and please try and
3 keep me on track here. At the same time in Vietnam, it's now '68. The United States has
4 been at war for three or at least three years, Marines been ashore. In Vietnam, garbage is
5 starting to build up. We're starting to have a lot of old equipment, sitting around the
6 country and junkyards or cantonment areas. Now, there are people who were assessing
7 this equipment like M-35, six-by. To take that six-by from Vietnam and the closest place
8 you can fix it is the US depot in Sagami, Japan. Is it worth it to the taxpayer to take an
9 old M-35 six-by truck, somehow get it on the ship, sail it all the way back to Japan, fix it
10 with the cost of Japanese labor, and get it back to Vietnam? Or do we just bury it in
11 Vietnam? Then the question becomes, "Well," this is grassroots ecology back then, the
12 word didn't exist. "What do we do with this equipment?" We bury it. And a gentleman
13 named Major General Ciccolella, who's chief of the MAAG in Taiwan has a lot of
14 division. He's up in Taipei. I'm at the other end of the island. He says, "What if we took
15 the junk out of Vietnam, brought it back to Taiwan-on-Taiwan shipping, and gave it to
16 our Chinese counterparts in the Chinese army and the Chinese marines?" They get to fix
17 it with the tools they already bought them. We're replenishing their inventories and
18 filling up their short falls with American equipment that has been repaired by the Chinese
19 themselves. It is in first rate, it's a little older, but it will work and it's serviceable. We
20 could cut down quickly on other moneys, the military assistance, equipment, saving the
21 United States money. Number two, getting our junk out of Vietnam, and number three,
22 reequipping our allies and giving them the experience of fixing. Particularly our allies in
23 the maintenance business fixing equipment. I thought that was a brilliant idea. So, junk
24 becomes big business. Now, somebody has to get down and do this. So, I'm volunteered
25 by the Marines because of the language and I'm the only single guy. So, I accompany
26 Major General Ciccolella, and we go down to Saigon and I'm a marine and I'm with this
27 little fellow General Ciccolella who eventually went on to get four sons in the Army. We
28 go out to MACV, Military Assistance Command, Vietnam, in '68, and I'm in sort of their
29 Pentagon. I'd never been there. We had breakfast out on the trail behind MACV with
30 some guy named Creighton Abrams. General Abrams who had the biggest hand I think
31 I've seen in any man. When he shook your hand, your hand had been shook. Just a bear

1 of a man, but good natured, very thoughtful. So, I found that very interesting. A Marine
2 captain there with the chief of the MAAG, the two-star, and General Abrams, the four-
3 star and we're talking big time about junk. So, that's the deal. Abrams will alert all the
4 junkyards, particularly Long Binh, which is the US Army logistics center just north of
5 Saigon. A huge sprawling piece of property. I don't know, I guess its five hundred acres,
6 but all the US logistics occurred. At any one time on Long Binh, there's at least twenty
7 US generals. That's how many flags are out by the headquarters. I say logistics,
8 everything coming into Vietnam, all the paperwork and so on, the United States does the
9 logistics so well and so did the US Army. Also, Long Binh was the area where all these
10 carcasses, broken trucks that were beyond being able to fix it the first or the second
11 echelon. There's probably about five echelons in maintenance. So, the deal is, Ciccolella,
12 if I have any problems in-country, I'm to report to General Abraham's office personally.
13 This is a very interesting command arrangement. The Marine captain, in the chief of the
14 US Army in Vietnam's office and also, I have a friend in Saigon who was the Chinese
15 ambassador to Saigon. If I have any problems and I am assigned six Chinese mechanics.
16 So, I take these mechanics and I'm talking Chinese to them all day. That was another
17 reason I was chosen as language. My job is to go around Vietnam assessing the junk
18 yards of what we can get out of Vietnam. And once a month, we would bring in a
19 Chinese LST (landing ship, tank) into the port of Newport, which is the port of Saigon or
20 to Da Nang. I am to fill up those LSTs with having my six Chinese mechanics make
21 assessments of the worn out, discarded, US equipment in the junkyards of South Vietnam
22 and getting somehow, that stuff down to the ships to load off these LSTs which come in
23 anywhere from thirty to sixty days. I found that very daunting as an assignment.

24 KC: I'm sure. Let me ask you this—

25 CD: I get the Chinese billet and my six people out of the junkyard. The US Army
26 (unintelligible) is very helpful to me. We go around every day assessing particularly M-
27 35 six-by's and Jeeps. Then they make an assessment, "Yep, I could fix this here or we
28 should take this back to Taiwan, and I can fix it there." Now I live in Saigon and every
29 day I commute out to Long Binh junkyard, but my vehicle, the Chinese, we build right
30 there, a couple of quarter-ton vehicle Jeeps. I had to rebuild from the wrecker, an M-52
31 wrecker. So sometimes I would drive, no license, nothing, but it was very serviceable. I

1 would drive my wrecker into town and park. Nobody was going to steal a wrecker, a Jeep
2 they would steal. So, I would live in Saigon. I did this for over four months, but I would
3 fill up every thirty days. I asked General Ciccolella. I said, “Look, the whole key to this
4 operation is the guy moving junk around the junkyard.” He said, “What are you talking
5 about?” I said, “I’ve got to be able to go to that corporal, pushing that wrecker and
6 moving junk around and say, “Look, this piece of equipment here, can you be a little
7 careful with it and move that over to this area where I got my Chinese mechanics?” I
8 mean, it didn’t matter to that corporal. There was no skin off his nose pushing his
9 bulldozer around. So, I said, “General, how about you send me down about sixty cases of
10 Heineken a month on the LSTs and I’ll use that as a cumshaw or as we say in the Middle
11 East baksheesh.” It is the grease that makes the skids work. So, I could approach a young
12 man on a bulldozer and say, “Son, look, if you take care of this piece of equipment and
13 treat it a little tenderly even though it’s just junk, how about would you like a case of
14 Heinekens or a couple of six packs?” Boy, I made a lot of friends, but I was able to move
15 huge amounts, I’m talking hundred, a hundred and fifty vehicles a month. Whether M-
16 35s or Jeeps out of the junkyards. Just using these six mechanics. Oh, I’m also there
17 during—I’ve got the same operation going, I split my mechanics. I got them up on the
18 junkyard in Da Nang doing the same thing. So, I’m coordinating two junkyards, all
19 transfers from ships coming into Saigon and moving a lot of junk. We were there for Tet,
20 February ‘68. That was really something. The Chinese mechanics, they didn’t understand
21 what was going on when the ammo dump blew up in Da Nang and then were up in the
22 junkyard and Tet’s going on. It kind of threw a kink in our operations for a couple of
23 days. That was basically five months of that. Then some other liaison trips back and forth
24 for them, was the essence of my second tour in Vietnam. Also, during that time traveling
25 between Da Nang and also exploring new junkyards at Nha Trang and Qui Nhon up at
26 Phu Bai. Anywhere where I could find junk that could be quickly repaired, serviceable,
27 and moved to the port and referred to evacuation back to Taiwan was basically the
28 outline of my mission accomplishment—oh, and by the way at this time, now, the Korean
29 MAAG, the United States MAAG to Korea, see’s what we’re doing on Taiwan and they
30 want their mechanics in junkyards, too.

31 KC: They need a piece of that action, don’t they?

1 CD: Yeah, so now we've got priority and fighting over junk. Between the Korean
2 marines and the Chinese marines and the Korean Army in the junkyards of Vietnam we
3 have this little skirmish, but myself and the Korean advisors, their MAAG advisors were
4 really trying to keep both of these countries on team mechanics at arm's length from each
5 other at fighting level that they perceived to be national equipment that they were
6 redeeming and evacuating back to their country. So, it was very interesting I found and
7 I'm glad I'm a US Marine. I get to do some interesting stuff, but I was treated very well
8 by General Abrams. I was in awe of the man. I never really had to break fire or glass to
9 get to him. I could call the colonel that worked for him and the colonel and I would
10 handle it and General Ciccolella I thought was a real prince and treated me
11 professionally. He always was responsive. When I wanted a Chinese LST at the MAAG
12 level, he would get that Chinese Navy to send that ship down there and we would fill it
13 up. Now, you could think about that. You could probably put somewhere in the
14 neighborhood of forty-eight six-bys inside a Chinese LST and then sprinkle it with a
15 bunch Jeeps and other kind of vehicles. But eventually, my understanding was—I even
16 kept statistic on it, that that program was most helpful to both nations, Korea and Taiwan,
17 and able to replace faster, their inventory. We critically needed, mostly US made
18 transport equipment at no cost to the US taxpayers. At minimum cost to the host
19 government was a real sense that the host government could actually get a lot of
20 maintenance training and repair work training through that program. It went on, probably,
21 until 1970. But on a bigger picture, too, you want to talk about someone with ecological
22 foresight that General Ciccolella had the sight to say, "Wait a minute, we'll leave
23 Vietnam and it's going to cost us money. We can't bury tanks and Jeeps. We have to
24 excavate." You see that later in the Iraq war, how much stuff and how cleanly the United
25 States evacuated stuff that had even been confiscated by the Iraqis in Kuwait and how
26 quick and sensitive the United States was to perform evacuations to leave the battlefield
27 in general, as clean as we found it as best we could. That the seeds of ecology were
28 already at work in Vietnam.

29 KC: That is a really fascinating part of the overall picture that you don't hear
30 anything about. I think that is a really cool little story.

1 CD: Because I worked with the Army very closely as a Marine, I remember now.
2 To give you an example, of scale. The United States Army trains at Fort Knox with more
3 tanks than the US Marine Corps owns. The Marine Corps only owns forty-eight tanks in
4 the battalion. So, three battalions of tanks is a total inventory. So, for a US young Marine
5 officer to get an appreciation of size of the US Army and particularly their logistics arms,
6 it really reinforced how, we won World War II, that logistics is really our bread and
7 butter once you get the United States going. The size of the US logistic efforts. I found
8 this amazing because when I realized what it took to supply eight US Army divisions and
9 two Marine Divisions in the field Vietnam, it all went through Long Binh. So, the size of
10 their logistics headquarters and the amount of people dedicated to it I just found
11 overwhelming, but appreciative and in admiration of the logistic systems of the United
12 States Army. So, for a young Marine captain to navigate that in the name of an Army
13 general, I thought that kept me busy for a while. I thought that I was helping.

14 KC: I would think that would keep you incredibly busy, especially when they
15 opened up the second junkyard, so to speak, up in Da Nang and you got to deal with that.
16 Like Phu Bai and Nha Trang.

17 CD: Yeah, I would fly up there on military aircraft. I would go to MACV and say
18 I need a seat on the next aircraft north. They would get me a seat, and I would have
19 mechanics up there. They would meet me and off we go. Vehicles that they had made,
20 they made in the sense that they found these hulks, refurbished them, and they were
21 serviceable. They had transports and lived right up there in the junkyards. They lived
22 right out on the field. So, I'd spend my time between the two and I had a little office in
23 Saigon. Anyhow, as I handed off that project to others, it probably grew, but my sensing
24 is the junkyard, and the pickings was probably starting to get thin by 1970. At this time,
25 on comes Vietnamization. Already you could begin to see the wheels and the winds of
26 change where lots of logistics is coming on all to be given to the ARVN and the
27 Vietnamese forces. In the beginning of the drawdown and the measured phase was the
28 US logistics silhouette in Vietnam started to decrease.

29 KC: Right, plus what is there, is the Chinese nationalists and the Koreans aren't
30 getting what the Vietnamese still might need to fix themselves, I would assume, as well.

1 CD: Right, the relationships again, remember the Koreans also have a lot of
2 weight. Because there was the Blue Dragon Division, which is stationed south of Da
3 Nang. There's an entire Korean division which we paid for heavily. All their transport.
4 We even built the Koreans a PX (post exchange). They had their own PX because they
5 were using their PX system and abusing it. So, the political decision was we would make
6 them their own PX. But their sectors down there, around Hoi An, which is a UNESCO
7 sight, a very interesting town. Sort of like Williamsburg would be in Virginia. They had a
8 good track record. The North Vietnamese did not like screwing with the Koreans. They
9 had a very fierce reputation, and I think the North Koreans—there was always a quiet
10 sector. I think the people in that sector they controlled also, stayed away from the South
11 Koreans. They didn't screw with them. But the point it, Korea had a presence in Vietnam,
12 a large one, and the Taiwanese had none, except for political support and a small quiet
13 logistics evacuation program.

14 KC: Now, a couple of questions I want to ask you here at this point, Colonel. One,
15 you mentioned that when the Tet Offensive kicked off in early 1968, that you were in Da
16 Nang. What do you remember about the Tet Offensive from your vantage point there in
17 Da Nang?

18 CD: I knew—well, we were kind of isolated. That was a tough three days with
19 stored communication. See, at the same time I had colleagues in the 1st Marine Division
20 operating in the area. I also had a brother there, too, but in the junkyard was when I
21 happened to be in Da Nang. I was not in Saigon at the time of Tet. When we started to
22 see the ammunition dumps explode, I knew something big was underway. I did not—and
23 I was sort of isolated. I couldn't travel into Da Nang. I had to stay out in the junkyard
24 with my mechanics. First of all, they were getting nervous. I had to tame them down.
25 Then we had enough food out and everything, but it was not a safe time to go on the road.
26 It took me about two days in the junkyard with some of the Americans running around to
27 understand not only what was happening locally, I thought this was an attack of sorts on
28 Da Nang. I did not know until almost the third day that this was countrywide because
29 communications had been broken, too. There was curfews. The ammunition dump burned
30 for about three days, but only after the third day was order restored, and the Vietnamese
31 people come out on the roads. Commerce began again in the sense of the daily market.

1 For three days, nobody sold anything. All the stores were shut. There were no farmers
2 coming to market. The roads going north up to Hai Van Pass and a town in Da Nang
3 because the junkyard was outside of town or was sort of eerie with no traffic instead of
4 high-speed vehicles armed with troops or whatever moving by. It took almost the third
5 day, even on the radio, to get an understanding that this was a nationwide, coordinated
6 assault that probably occurred in over a hundred locations.

7 KC: You mentioned that the Chinese that you were working with there at Da
8 Nang had some difficulty with some circumstances that Tet Offensive created. Can you
9 get into some of the details about what you experienced and what they had to deal with?

10 CD: These mechanics, remember now, in 1968, you still have Taiwanese who had
11 fought Mao Zedong in the late forties through the truce of '47, the collapse of Hainan
12 Island, the evacuation of half of the Nationalist army from Hainan in the early fifties.
13 Some of these older mechanics I had, they were master sergeants and sergeants had been
14 people that had been at war for maybe twenty-five years. They fought on the mainland.
15 Now, they got along with the local people because you'd be surprised how many
16 Vietnamese, in urban context, near the proximity of Da Nang spoke Chinese. So, I mean,
17 Chinese is basically a southern—some Vietnamese disagree, but to me it's it southern
18 sub-in. Cantonese, which is a dialect of Chinese that was put on the Western script by the
19 Jesuits in 1887. So, most of the old Vietnamese documents or even traveling around
20 Vietnam, there was so much Chinese writing. You can go to any cemetery. Most of the
21 characters for the tombstones that are over fifty years old are in Chinese. So, I had to
22 benefit the ability to read the Chinese tombstones and many of the signs. The same way
23 with the mechanics. Some of them were from the South of China, had the ability, oh I
24 don't know, it's a polemic analogy it's like a Portuguese talking to a Frenchman. There
25 were roots in the language that were somewhat synonymous. And they were pretty good;
26 the Chinese did pick up some Vietnamese working down there. So, they had the ability to
27 understand through their Vietnamese sourcing and their language and their own instincts
28 that something major was underway. We're in the right place at the right time. You
29 know, it comes more and a natural instinct, how are we going to go back to Taiwan and
30 the safety of Taiwan working with this young American here. And does he have the juice
31 or what we call the guanxi, the baksheesh, does he have the juice to get us out of here if

1 this turned very nasty? But that was their only concern, and it was temporal. It was
2 passing and when I could explain to them what it was and that it was under control.
3 That's the way life is. Once in a while you're going to see an ammo dump blow up. They
4 were okay with it.

5 KC: All right, my next question to you, Colonel, and I want to preface this
6 question by saying it sounds like you were involved in some really fascinating work.
7 Something that is unusual, something that no one else had been doing, something that
8 was very important, but you were also trained recon. I mean, you were a guy who should
9 be out in the jungle. You are a guy who should be out leading troops, finding the bad
10 guys, reporting, engaging whatever it might be. Now, all of a sudden, you're the
11 superintendent of junkyards in Vietnam. What was that like for you?

12 CD: Well, it was fascinating. I had my trigger time. Somebody else had to get a
13 shot at it. I knew I was going back, but also, I remember, I was there as an extension of
14 my personal decision upon leaving the fleet Marine forces to study Chinese. I felt myself
15 very, very lucky to find myself gone to the country to become a little more proficient in
16 the language and hopefully to the point where it became indelible and involved in
17 something. I knew when I looked at all my other contemporaries there in the MAAG and
18 the Army and everything, who knew Vietnam better than I did? I had just come out of
19 that environment eighteen months before. I knew my way around the country. I thought I
20 was given an interesting mission by flag officers on Taiwan ahead of the MAAG. I had a
21 Marine colonel who condoned this sort of thing and understood it and said, "Yeah. Go
22 help the Army do this." So, I was on my own, I had a degree of independence to report to
23 anybody except the flag officer who lived in Taipei. So also, from time to time, like on
24 the way out to the junkyards, I could also drive across town and see friends of mine.
25 Denny was Major Roger Simmons who was the CO of 1st Force Reconnaissance
26 Company. Roger had been my first company commander when I first got to Okinawa in
27 the summer of 1964. So, as I had progressed up to captain from lieutenant, he had
28 progressed from captain to major. So, to be able to see my first company commander,
29 that was a luxury allowed to me, I'd just tell the guys in the junkyard I'd be back in three
30 hours and go right out to see Roger. One day, Roger said to me, "Look, we just had
31 something come up on the radio. There's a medevac, would you like to come?" I said,

1 “Sure.” It was on a Sunday. I was flying around, here I am flying around with Roger just
2 trying to help evacuate somebody. I found it an adventure. So, I was tuned in and I could
3 talk to my brother in Da Nang. So, I was sort of in-country, that kind of counted. I knew I
4 was coming from combat support. You know, you’ve got combat, combat support and
5 combat service support. That’s how the Marines look at the three levels of engagement.
6 I’d been in the combat role, and the combat support is sort of your engineers and that sort
7 of thing. Your combat service support is your logistics and supply people. So, I found
8 myself in a combat service support role foreign to ally government, getting proficient in
9 the language that I had chosen. Also, being able to check in with colleagues. Actually,
10 standing in Da Nang still drinking Vietnamese beer if I wanted it. I knew that after this
11 tour, when I went back to Taiwan, and that’s indeed what happened. I left Taiwan in May
12 of 1970 and within a month I was back in Vietnam assigned as an advisor with the
13 Vietnamese marines. So, I mean, early on I could see that Vietnam was going to go for a
14 while. So, to be able to take it out be sent to the 2nd Division and go through the language
15 training, all the while I’m sensitive to stories of people now. You’re starting to get
16 Marine officers that are on their second and beginning of their third tour in Vietnam. And
17 I think that today, when I hear these stories about young officers in Afghanistan and Iraq
18 for their fifth and sixth tours, I have an appreciation of what they’re going through in
19 terms if they look at warfare through generations in terms of a decade. So that’s the way I
20 looked at my time in that Chinese logistic project was, “I’ll be back, and I’ll be in the
21 combat role again so enjoy this while you can.” And that’s what I did.

22 KC: All right, you were also in a very good position here because you weren’t
23 going out on combat patrols, you weren’t leading a company. You had this degree of
24 independence, and you traveled throughout South Vietnam quite a bit. We’re looking at
25 1968 here. How had the war changed since you were there in ‘65 and ‘66 compared to
26 what you saw in 1968?

27 CD: Now ‘65 was an exploratory time. We began to stretch out, we began probe,
28 and we would have engagements. There were clashes, there were some casualties. But
29 by ‘68, the Marine Corps itself had been rotating through we had draftees there. On
30 occasion in ‘68 and ‘69 and as you know, there were weeks where the United States
31 Marine Corps was taking two hundred casualties a week. So, the first thing that it

1 changed was the casualties; an alarming rate of casualties, two hundred. Which was
2 indicative of the size of some of these firefights, particularly because the 3rd Marine
3 Division had already moved more up into I Corps. There was some huge fierce battles
4 going on there by '68 in the north. Two, was the influx of new Army unit's major
5 components into the Central Highlands. There was the advent of heavy mechanized US
6 presence tank divisions. Not only the lightly armed 173rd, the 82nd Airborne, but these
7 were the "Big Red One" (1st Infantry Division), the 1st Cav, these were major US Army
8 units. I would think, back then, the United States would have had eighteen infantry
9 divisions in the US Army. At least half of them were deployed to Vietnam. That was a
10 huge increase in people and a personnel turnover of a manpower pipeline. Many of them
11 were draftees. I remember there was the emergence of these horror stories I would hear.
12 Which were completely alien to my first tour. Like fragging of officers, I'd hear stories
13 about that. Desertions, possible mutiny, drugs, advent of drugs. I didn't see much of it,
14 but I would hear stories with a constant drum beat in the background. The US Army
15 would experience these isolated in to raise personal concern about what was happening to
16 my Army. On the Marine side, what problems we did have in terms of racial, some drugs.
17 Most of my colleagues who were in combat units in the 1st Division, when I would visit
18 them and we would chat. I was on the listening move. I would say these are basically in
19 general relegated to rear area troops, troops that are idle. Whereas the quality of troops,
20 even though some of them are draftees on the front line out in the actual line units, the
21 infantry battalions that are tromping around in the countryside. There's not a problem.
22 They're allegiant, their loyalty is first class. They don't have these problems. They're still
23 fighting for the right goal. Basically, you know, when the sun goes down and you're
24 fighting mom, apple pie, all of that sort of goes out the window. You're in that foxhole or
25 in that situation and preservation of yourself and your immediate buddies is your primary
26 motive for fighting. That still was strong and was at a high tide. That was not an issue. So
27 that was the 3rd Flag. So the casualties, the change in the ideological complexion. The
28 fourth thing that I found that most Marines didn't have, because of my travels all over, I
29 was moving all around Vietnam and getting to see the different cauldrons. A firefight in I
30 Corps Marines had nothing to do with some guy who's slugging away in a rice paddy
31 down in the Delta. So, by travel, through logistics, I was able to view some of the

1 different cauldrons of activity. I could sort of like take the temperature of that cauldron of
2 how the Army was doing there, what was their attitude. Did they just want to get out of
3 there? Were they giving it a professional try? I sort of got a sampling of the temperature
4 in different spots throughout Vietnam over great distances. So, I could get in and I could
5 sense ideological sensing that things were beginning to shift. So, so much so that at the
6 beginning of 1970, Henry Kissinger and Le Duc Tho and all these fellows, there was talk
7 of some sort of a way out, a compromise. This wasn't going to go on forever, that it was
8 difficult to measure progress. There was a backlash in the American Congress, and it was
9 the starting of the Church Amendment and that sort of thing. So, you could see it as an
10 ideological winds in the United States. You got to remember what Tet did—and this was
11 clear to me after Tet; it didn't take long. I realized ten days after Tet when I read all those
12 reports and talked to people, that the North Vietnamese had made conscious decision to
13 sacrifice their entire Viet Cong infrastructure in massive frontal assault in that at not one
14 frontal assault or battle, waged by the Viet Cong infrastructure against South Vietnamese
15 or US forces, casualties, not one succeeded. The United States got their nose bloodied,
16 but the entire Vietnamese, Viet Cong infrastructure, which probably took twenty-five
17 years to build, had been annihilated. That the United States, in each of these little pockets
18 had met the threat of the surprise attack of Tet and met it well and destroyed lots of
19 Vietnamese. They had accomplished nothing on the ground tactically. The only thing that
20 had happened was at the strategic level. Thanks to guys like Walter Cronkite, they made
21 us blink. I'm a firm believer that the North Vietnamese at that time, that Tet, even two
22 weeks after, had a lot of casualties on the south and east side. It was clear that Tet was an
23 absolute tactical failure. That was some eleventh-hour gamble by the North Vietnamese
24 to throw a surge onto the South Vietnamese government and hopefully the South
25 Vietnamese government would panic, and parts of the government would come over to
26 the cause. That was a miserable failure. So, on the ground, Tet, to me and my colleagues,
27 was an absolute blunder of the greatest proportions. That they had wasted so much blood
28 and treasure and carefully built-up infrastructure on a one-time gamble. At the other end
29 of the hourglass, back in the United States and the press, and Walter Cronkite had created
30 the idea that, "Chicken Little, the sky is falling. This is going nowhere, and they caused
31 us to blink around the world which then triggered a number of questions in the Nixon

1 administration. How do we get out of this now?” How do we end ten years of blood and
2 treasure? That Tet was a catalyst to cause us to ideologically blink and to questionable
3 values and to reverse our process. Our thinking was, “How do we extricate from Vietnam
4 with the least amount of friction, blood, and loss of treasure to ourselves and our allies?”
5 Which that spawned the onset of the concept of Vietnamization. Given as much as we
6 can to defend ourselves and then say, “Sayonara.”

7 KC: You mentioned that you were able to, your words were, to take the
8 temperature in these different places.

9 CD: Please say that again.

10 KC: You used the phrase “Take the temperature.” That you were able to take the
11 temperature of these different places in Vietnam there in 1968. I Corps, you’re going
12 down to the Delta, etc. What was your diagnosis? When you left this last—at the end of
13 this particular tour, when you ended your time in ’68, what was your diagnosis of the
14 war? The way the war was being fought?

15 CD: Okay, that’s a good question. Now, at the end of the individual level, as I was
16 closing out the Chinese logistics project, I knew I was going back to Vietnam. I was
17 trying to angle for my next role. Could I influence the action to get me into a situation
18 and my next combat tour that I would like and that I would relish and enjoy? In my
19 travels around logistics, when I was in Saigon, I would go over and drink while they were
20 in town. With the US Marines assigned to the Vietnamese Marine Corps. I found them a
21 great bunch. I said, “Gosh, if I ever come back, I wonder if the Marine Corps would let
22 me do that. Go from one advisor role to another advisor role.” So, I began to agitate and
23 drew friends back at headquarters in the Marine Corps. If I’ve got to leave Taiwan and
24 I’m a single guy, how about I run a volunteer. Whatever it takes, I want to go with the
25 Vietnamese Marine Corps. I know about military equipment logistics programming.
26 There’s got to be a need for that and equipping the Vietnamese marines and bringing
27 them equipment. I’ve got the Chinese language and on and on and on. So, in my mind I’d
28 be building my case to be able to go with the Vietnamese marines if I could. Otherwise, I
29 would gladly go where the infantry battalion is. But remember, I could see that those
30 battalions were beginning to leave by 1970. The 1st Marine Division had declared “We’re
31 going home.” So, I began to see that if I went with the Vietnamese marines, there could

1 be a point where, hey, I'm the only one left with a handful of residuals has the effects on
2 Vietnamization. It had no effect on the advisory efforts. There was the US Marines,
3 probably sixty to eighty US Marine officers that were assigned advisory effort to the
4 Vietnamese Marine Corps. That would be a whole brave new world. The 1st Marine
5 Division, the 3rd Marine Division gone. We would be the last Americans in country. So,
6 when I got to the Vietnamese marines, I detected none of that animosity. Even though
7 those Vietnamese officers saw that the United States was drawing down. The United
8 States was leaving none of those Vietnamese marine officers to which I had to work with
9 ever resented that, they understood, and it had nothing to do with their war, and they
10 would fight on and soldier on. So, I did not see a Vietnamese resentment with my new
11 colleagues in these marines on the concept of Vietnamization. Ironically, they said, "This
12 is great. We're going to get more new toys." They could have used new handout
13 equipment and individual equipment and new artillery. They saw that as an injection of
14 new equipment and renovation. So, I guess that aspect of Vietnamization works where to
15 grassroots fighting level, the Vietnamese themselves saw that as an opportunity to
16 refurbish some of the equipment that had been worn down through the years.
17 Ideologically, for me, I worried about China. Again, I had a new lens on what China left.
18 I still wondered, and it took me a bit longer until I got back to the United States, to
19 understand exactly what Tet was. I did not fully understand Tet until maybe four or five
20 years later in retrospect. I can go into that if you think that's appropriate now, Doctor, or I
21 can wait.

22 KC: No, we were talking about the Tet Offensive earlier, so go ahead and give me
23 your perspective on that. I think it would be a good time for it.

24 CD: It came by 1976, I'd find myself sculpting ahead in graduate school,
25 studying, ironically, Chinese history. Studying part of my master's and then hopefully
26 later, if I could, a PhD in Asian history. It strikes me, and I was able to corroborate back
27 into the '68, '70 period of Tet. To run a war—and I go back to logistics, a certain amount
28 of logistics is needed daily. Let's pick a number, let's say to supply the US Marine Corps
29 takes twenty tons a day. So be it also with the Vietnamese, North Vietnamese. But their
30 perennial clients are the Soviets. In my mind, we were able to reconstruct, that by 1968,
31 or no, by the middle of '67, the Cultural Revolution in China, I mentioned to you, wasn't

1 great, it wasn't proletarian, and it wasn't cultural. It is an opportunity to maintain Mao
2 Zedong power in whatever it takes. And whatever it takes then creates a bedlam in the
3 student societies across China. But reapplying that to the Soviets who is the patron of the
4 North Vietnamese, there are only three ways to get logistics at the necessary levels to
5 sustain warfare into Vietnam. A, it has to go from the Port of Arkhangelsk around the top
6 of Finland all the way down through the Suez Canal or around Africa to Sihanoukville in
7 Cambodia. And then overland from Sihanouk into the Parrot's Beak, which is west of
8 Saigon. That's how the furthest southern areas of Vietnam are supplied by the Soviets to
9 the Vietnamese. The second route is right through China down to Nanning and then from
10 Nanning by railroad transfer into North Vietnam. By '67, Chinese students are stopping
11 trains, ripping equipment and stealing it off of these Vietnam-bound trains from the
12 Soviet Union and for those who sit in Moscow. Say, I would say that this route is no
13 longer tenable to send equipment from the Soviet Union to Vietnam through China
14 directly. The third route is from the port of Vladivostok to sail it to Hanoi and then down
15 the Ho Chi Minh Trail. By that time in '67-'68, we are bombing Hai Phuong on and off
16 on everything that sails into Hanoi or further south goes right under the scrutiny of the 7th
17 Fleet. So, from the Moscow vantagepoint the three main supply routes moved a modest
18 amount and daily logistics into Vietnam are compromised. This is also, in '67, the Suez
19 Canal is closed. Mysteriously to this day I still don't understand the USS *Liberty*. Who
20 sunk the *Liberty*? The Israelis, and why it is still under great clouds. The fact is, if you're
21 sitting in Moscow, we can no longer use the Suez Canal. We have to now make that line
22 from the Arkhangelsk by going around Africa. So, for some mysterious reason, by the
23 middle of '67, all logistics of the North Vietnamese is in jeopardy. I choose to believe in
24 my readings that the Soviets, then, went to the North Vietnamese and said to them, "We
25 can only continue to supply you on a limited basis. You must take your on-hand stocks
26 and calculate what to do with them and maybe make a giant attack against the US
27 presence in South Vietnam and hope for the best and keep your fingers crossed. All bets
28 are off, it's up to you." I think with that knowledge, probably in the fall of 1967, those in
29 Hanoi that makes these kind of decisions say, "We can no longer keep this going. We're
30 under tremendous pressure, but it looks like we're going to lose because there's no
31 logistics and the Soviets are going to write us off because they can't be supplied." Then

1 there's a set of political decisions. Probably in the fall of '67, which cast a fate and said
2 we're going to try it. We're going to sacrifice the Vietnamese infrastructure by the mass
3 coordinated terrorist attack by the country which is known as Tet. So that, over the years,
4 is my brief of why they would insanely sacrifice the Viet Cong infrastructure supported
5 by some North Vietnamese units because they had no other choice and it was the only die
6 they had left to cast and ironically, and thanks to the American media, that's the third
7 time I mentioned Walter Cronkite. "Oh, the sky is falling." Worked for them. It caused
8 the United States to psychologically blink. But that is my explanation of Tet, it's rational,
9 why it occurred, but I didn't come to that cohesive explanation until maybe four or five
10 years after the fact.

11 KC: When do you come back to the States after this tour in Taiwan?

12 CD: When do I come back to the States?

13 KC: Yes.

14 CD: Let's see, I went with the Vietnamese Marine Corps. I just missed Cambodia,
15 which is another very good—Cambodia, the invasion of Cambodia, the incursion, most
16 of my colleagues were there in May of '70 and I got to the Vietnamese Marines in June
17 of '70. I came back to the United States in July of '71.

18 KC: So, you stayed in that part?

19 CD: 12-and-a-half-month tour.

20 KC: Okay, so you stayed there with the nationalist Chinese Marines until '69?

21 CD: No, no, no, I went back to Taiwan and then finished that tour out. I stayed
22 with them until May of '70.

23 KC: Oh, okay, okay. Very good, very good. I understand now, I see now.

24 CD: So, my time in the United States—I've got ten days in the United States
25 between March of '68 and July of 1971.

26 KC: Okay, very good, very good. Now I've got the timeline down here.

27 CD: So, I'm getting to be quite the Asian hand.

28 KC: (Laughing) By the sounds of it, yeah, I'd say so. Well, why don't we stop
29 there for today, Colonel?

30 CD: All right, Charlie.

Interview with Carmine DelGrosso
Session [4] of [6]
Date: 26 October 2010

1 Kelly Crager: This is Kelly Crager continuing an oral history interview with
2 Colonel Carmine DelGrosso. Today is October 26, 2010. I am in Lubbock, Texas, on the
3 campus of Texas Tech University and the colonel is joining me by telephone from his
4 home in San Clemente, California. Okay, Colonel, when we left off yesterday, you were
5 talking about your time in Vietnam, essentially running these junkyards throughout the
6 country or working with the Nationalist Chinese Marine Corps. Something that you
7 found to be very fulfilling and incredibly interesting. Now, pick up the story from
8 roughly the end of your time there in Vietnam and going back to Taiwan and finishing up
9 your time with the Nationalist Chinese Marines.

10 Carmine DelGrosso: Well, my Vietnam episodes were almost six months of
11 working at junkyards. It was an ongoing successful project that was probably ongoing for
12 another two years or so to my understanding. I returned to Taiwan to my normal posting
13 as an advisor with the Chinese Nationalists Marine Corps and then received orders, again,
14 to the advisory duty, with the South Vietnamese Marine advisors. Now, when I left the
15 Chinese Marines in Kaohsiung, Tsoying, Taiwan, I simply, because I was a single man,
16 returned to the United States, saw my family for about ten days and then went back to
17 Vietnam. Before I left, I stopped at Camp Pendleton. I tried to learn as much Vietnamese
18 as I could in a two-week period of time. I reasoned that the Vietnamese was very similar
19 to grammar and structure to Mandarin and Cantonese Chinese. I went to Camp Pendleton
20 every day during leave. See, because I had heard that many of my contemporary
21 proprietors spoke Vietnamese easily giving them an abbreviated language course or what
22 was called a MATA (Military Advisory Team Academy) course at Fort Bragg or
23 Quantico, Virginia, and learned Vietnamese culture and language. So, I did a little
24 Vietnamese on my own and then reported into Saigon. I initially was assigned to the
25 advisory staff. I worked for a Colonel Frank Tiff and Lieutenant Colonel Alexander
26 Patrick McMillian. I had known Lieutenant Colonel McMillian who had been the attaché
27 to the Chinese Naval Attaché to the—assistant naval attaché to the Chinese government
28 in Taipei in '68. So, he spoke Chinese. Later, it was interesting because there were a

1 number of occasions where in the field, I would get chewed out in Chinese by Lieutenant
2 Colonel McMillian, which I always relished. But because he had known that I had served
3 as the military assistance programmer for the Chinese marines and understood the
4 structure and the workings of military programming, I was assigned to the staff in Saigon
5 for about ninety-day period to help unravel and rectify their military assistance program.
6 The Vietnamese were also in receipt of US military equipment as sort of a patron of the
7 US Marine Corps just like the Chinese marines were a patron of the MAAG. The influx
8 and the distribution of the military assistance planning and equipment for the South
9 Vietnamese Marines was sort of a sub project for the US Marine Corps to begin to
10 furnish them with equipment and artillery pieces. They didn't have much, the South
11 Vietnamese Marines, outside of armed weapons and individual gear. But there was a
12 need to set up and look up that account for programming purposes. So I worked there on
13 the staff for about three months hoping to reconcile the ongoing program which the
14 commander in chief's Pacific, CINCPACs (Commander-in-Chief, Pacific), a database to
15 make sure the right amounts of equipment at the right time in the right quantities were
16 right for the South Vietnamese Marine Corps. Interesting work, but very small compared
17 to the amount of work necessary to run a fifty thousand man Marine Corps on Taiwan.

18 KC: Sure, sure.

19 CD: But I relished it and I thought it was a good way to ease into the situation to
20 appreciate just how much a language was going to be necessary in the field and hear the
21 stories of my colleagues coming and going back into the field. Most of the people who
22 went right to infantry battalions and there were nine infantry battalions and three artillery
23 battalions. Each battalion was staffed either by two Marine officers. One was a senior
24 Marine, usually a major, and the junior advisor was a captain. Now, they would call them
25 advisors. It's a nice term, but there wasn't much advice given. Rather the essence of an
26 advisor at that time was that you were the link to the massive amount of US firepower
27 that was available in Vietnam. You and your radio operators—you were given a radio
28 operator, a driver, and a cowboy/batman, which I'll talk about in a minute. You and those
29 three people would be assigned, and you would live with the Vietnamese Marine
30 battalion in the field for as long as they were in the field. You would eat their food three
31 times a day and you would try to be present for all their tactical meetings and so on and

1 be available on an as needed basis to the battalion commander in terms of advice or his
2 personal link to US firepower which ranged from B-52s to combat shipping offshore. No
3 less use US artillery. Also, as a liaison, to friendly US units in an area where the
4 Vietnamese marines may have been operating to make sure there was no conflict or
5 coordination issues. So, it was an interesting lifestyle. You were outfitted in their
6 uniforms, ate their food, and commenced as much as you could to speak Vietnamese.
7 Then you hopefully were accepted by the Vietnamese and occasionally they would
8 actually seek your advice. In my relationship as a junior advisor and then worked with
9 Major Dick Hughes and I spent all my time with the XO (executive officer) of the
10 Vietnamese Marine battalion. It was interesting in my case because I made a special
11 request. I asked that my radio operator speak Chinese. So, keep in mind that a good
12 chunk of Saigon is Cholon, which is the Chinese part of Saigon and many Chinese and
13 Mandarin speaking as well as Hakka and Cantonese. So, we had a situation where my
14 counterpart and the battalion commander's counterpart spoke no English, but the
15 battalion commander himself spoke French. So, I asked that my radio operators spoke
16 Mandarin. So, on many occasions, I could speak to my radio operator who would in turn,
17 explain that in Vietnamese to my counterpart and also, I could read French. So sometimes
18 the orders or communiques were written in French, and I could read those from the
19 battalion commander. So, I had a windfall of an interesting logistics arrangement which I
20 thought worked to my favor. There was also a lot of respect that came with that, too. At
21 night, many times we would sleep in the cemetery and the Vietnamese, knowing this,
22 with this the Chinese background would come to me and ask, "What did the tombstone
23 say?" So, I was able to interpret the tombstones and who was buried here and when and
24 the dates. So, there was a special respect or rapport that I had that windfall because they
25 also understood, too, that I spent a lot of time in Asia. So, there was a kinship knowing
26 that I had great loyalties to Asia and things Asian. That worked to my advantage. When I
27 was assigned to the 1st Battalion, their motto was "*Cu Dem*;" it was the oldest Vietnamese
28 because it was the 1st Battalion and *Cu Dem* means "night owls." I found that the
29 Vietnamese had respect for me, they treated me fairly. I was invited to every function.
30 The only functions I would avoid is when the battalion commander diminished the non-
31 judicial punishment. It was somewhat physical. So, I would just quietly go the other way

1 and read my newspapers and let them administer their judicial approach to military
2 infractions. I found them to be very brave individuals, no nonsense. They were literally
3 tigers, they were fearless, most of the Vietnamese. All the stories I'd heard about the
4 ARVN units and the ARVN in general and how they would flee and so on, I found that
5 not the case. There were times where I felt I was just as safe with the Vietnamese
6 Marines as with my own US Marines. At no time did I ever see them in a combat
7 situation flinch. They always attacked with vigor and professionalism. They were tough
8 little fighters, and their subsistence is worth comment. When we would travel and the
9 Vietnamese Marines and the Vietnamese airborne was somewhat held as a strategic force
10 by the central government in Saigon. That is, there were certain projects they wanted
11 handled, certain areas classified. They would send the Vietnamese Marines. So, prior
12 to—well, from 1966 to 1970, an assignment with the Vietnamese Marines would find
13 you in the Delta down south in the U Minh Forest down south, in the Central Highlands.
14 You really did get to see a lot of real estate, even in a short, one year tour. My time with
15 the Vietnamese Marines, I got to do some traveling. For the most part, it was up in I
16 Corps, we were one of the first initial battalions. Later, during Lam Son 719, the entire
17 Vietnamese Marine Corps was dispatched to I Corps. So, they had eight or nine infantry
18 battalions and three artillery battalions fully engaged in I Corps. When you were on the
19 road, if you were in the Delta, rice was available. Because you lived as part of their mess.
20 What they ate, you ate. So, when you were in the Delta, there was always rice, three
21 times a day. You could get fish, fish were plentiful. When you moved to the Central
22 Highlands, you even had salad, tomatoes, and you had cooked vegetables and so on.
23 When you were dispatched to I Corps, much of the food there was expensive for them.
24 The price of rice doubled. I remember, it went from forty to eighty piastres. Rarely could
25 you get fish when you were engaged inland in I Corps. So, your diet suffered somewhat.
26 There were times when rice was delivered by helicopters because the weather could not
27 get to your positions to unload some rice or fish or whatever. So, we spent a lot of time
28 eating grass soup on the trail with the greens we could find that was cooked into a soup.
29 We lived on that. To give you by relative example, when I started a tour with the 1st
30 Battalion, I weighed probably about a hundred and sixty-five pounds. When I completed
31 my tour at the South Vietnamese Marine Corps, it was down to a hundred and forty

1 pounds. That was just a question of diet and heat. What I'm trying to note is, depending
2 on your location, because so much of their food stuff was from the land, depending on
3 where the battalion was assigned, relegated the degree of the caloric intake and value for
4 your diet. It was healthy food three times a day. Also, I had a luxury of a driver/
5 bodyguard. Kind of a batman in the old British system. When I needed something to go
6 look after and get it for me.

7 KC: A cowboy, I believe is the phrase you all use.

8 CD: That's the word, cowboy. Yeah, my cowboy/batman. I never abused it, but
9 he was always there, and he would look after me in a protective sort of way, like a
10 bodyguard, which I greatly appreciated. Particularly sometimes driving through an urban
11 context in an automobile or a Jeep. My radio operator, again, he was from Cholon. He
12 spoke Mandarin, that little trio we got along splendidly. I thought the rapport with myself
13 and my counterpart with both the battalion commander and the executive officer that was
14 correct and cordial, and was professional, and I enjoyed the experience thoroughly. So,
15 in the advisory I felt the unique opportunity to compare. I'm probably one of the few
16 people that was assigned to two different advisory efforts. One was one a more
17 conventional sophisticated level of the Chinese marines and a large organization that had
18 left that type of fighting that the Vietnamese Marines were undergoing probably in the
19 late forties to move to a Vietnamese Marine Corps which basically just simple structured,
20 just battalion level. Fully engaged and often committed to combat at critical points. I also
21 worried that those people, when I got there, some of them had been fighting eight and
22 nine years. Yet, it never affected their attitude. They never looked tired; they never
23 sought excuses. I thought their judicial system of administering judicial and non-judicial
24 punishment was superb. The average trooper came from all parts of the country. I had
25 great respect for his officers and his staff NCOs. Like I said, they were at it a long time.
26 Early on, I realized I could teach this guy nothing, but rather he would come to me when
27 he wanted something and that's basically the way we operated. Once in a while I was
28 asked for tactical advice and I would give it readily, but I would end it. I would not peer
29 into his business nor seek to command his troops. I was an advisor and again, I made sure
30 that my equipment and my links, my radio links to US supporting arms was always
31 available and I knew where all that was and I could get it for him if he required. So again,

1 the rapport was correct and cordial. When we would stand down and come back out of
2 the mountain, they'd come back for thirty days in Saigon. That was basically free time.
3 When they got back to Saigon, they had families. So, it was easier to get out on liberty
4 and see their families. So, the battalion basically dispersed. We didn't do any training, per
5 say. And after thirty days or two weeks, they would come back as any normal fighting
6 organization from liberty and leave posture and reported. There were never any UAs
7 (unauthorized absence). They always came back and then we'd redeploy. But the policy
8 was, when they were back in Saigon, their time was their time, and I never tried to sell
9 anything to them or try to encourage them or practice with their weaponry. None of that,
10 it was their time, and they deserved it. They enjoyed that. I was often invited during the
11 downtime to a battalion or a company party where they would roll out their best. They
12 would even have ice available, which was a big thing, *nuoc da*. If you had ice, it was a
13 symbol of things are looking up. So, to be able and go out and have ice with a beer with
14 my counterparts and the different companies in the 1st Battalion. It was always a pleasure.
15 By the way, this is a great distinction, having come from an Asian background and served
16 in Taiwan for three years, I was allowed to have an insight into Vietnamese society,
17 particularly Saigon, where ninety-nine percent of the US Marines never had that chance.
18 Their perception of Vietnam was you were put into I Corps every two weeks and maybe a
19 helicopter drops you a case of beer. The only Vietnamese they ever met was old farm
20 people in black pajamas and conical hats chewing betel nut. They had no concept of the
21 Vietnamese society. That when it was very sophisticated history of proud people highly
22 developed in arts and music. So, my window into that society, that introduction was made
23 by the Vietnamese Marines by inviting me to certain Vietnamese parties in the greater
24 Saigon area so I could see that they, too, had a family life, a sophistication, a set of
25 cultural standards that were thousands of years old. All the time I would see the
26 Vietnamese, I would see that this was really an imprint of Chinese civilization. Even
27 when we went to Hue, it was remarkable at the Citadel at Hue, in many ways, it
28 resembled the Forbidden City in Beijing. This also interested me in terms of gentry
29 systems and how Vietnamese society operated prior to the war and gentrified a society
30 with peasants, bureaucrats, and mandarins at the top. And of course, I came to understand
31 this through Taiwan and really what you have is an extension here of the Chinese gentry

1 system stretching down from southern China into Vietnam. Then I got into the history,
2 the Viet's versus the Cham versus the Mir. How Vietnam was put together by patchwork.
3 Also, imprinted on us was the hundred-year attempt by the French to impose and build a
4 colony there. The amount of time the French put into it, in blood and sweat, and even the
5 construction of the roads and the telephone lines had that French imprint. I found that a
6 very interesting society. Again, that was not probably allowed from my colleagues in the
7 US Marine Corps who were fighting up in the north, and I Corps was just out in the
8 jungle, period. There from time to time I was allowed insight to the French, Vietnamese,
9 Chinese civilization in the south, particularly in and around the Saigon area.

10 KC: This has just been a terrific overview of the way you saw this and the way
11 you approached this. I've got some questions. I want to take you back.

12 CD: But what I'm saying, I began to look at Indochina. As a whole and I had
13 great fascination about Laos and how the Cambodians fit into it. I remember my
14 colleagues, I got there too late. When I got there in June of 1970, they had all just come
15 back from the Cambodian incursion. This is where Nixon was on the radio saying, "There
16 are no US personnel in the Cambodian incursion. It is all being done by the Vietnamese."
17 Meanwhile, six or eight of the Vietnamese battalions were dispatched into the Parrot's
18 Beak in Cambodia and crossed the Mekong at the Neak Loeung Ferry and were deployed
19 around Phnom Penh, but never went into Phnom Penh, but there was US advisors with
20 them. I missed that opportunity by probably thirty days, but I did get to participate in the
21 incursion into Laos in February 1971 on Operation Lam Son 719.

22 KC: Which, of course, is one of the most famous, if not infamous actions in the
23 Vietnam War, of course.

24 CD: Yeah, it was. I can comment on if you think that's appropriate.

25 KC: Well, if I may here, colonel, let me interrupt you and take you back a little bit
26 here for this tour as an advisor. I certainly want to spend a lot more time on Lam Son
27 when we get there. Let me take you back a little bit because I've got some questions
28 about all the things you've discussed so far today. The first question I have for you is, at
29 the end of your tour with MAAG on Taiwan, why were you interested in going back to
30 Vietnam, and this time, in an advisory capacity? Why did you want to go back to
31 Vietnam as an advisor?

1 CD: That is a good question. The first is, I had to go. My tour on Taiwan was not
2 considered an overseas tour. I filled the bill of an accompanied person. Now, in the
3 Marine Corps, logic back then was if you filled a tour between Vietnam tours and you
4 filled a role where I could have brought my family and did not, the logic was, I'm sorry,
5 that was a company tour. You go from a combat tour to a company tour back to a combat
6 tour.

7 KC: Okay.

8 CD: So that was the progression. I had to go. I was interested in the advisor
9 efforts. Maybe because the lieutenant colonel and McMillian was the XO and I had
10 chatted with him at a few conferences where the allied Marine Corps in the Pacific would
11 meet at CINCPAC once a year and talk about programming. Different equipment and
12 what the US policy was. So, you had representatives from the Koreans, the South
13 Vietnamese and Colonel McMillian would come, myself for the Chinese Marines and the
14 Korean Marines. We would discuss techniques, policies of US distribution of equipment
15 to allied Marine Corps in the Pacific. See, this whole idea of the MAAGs has got to be
16 seen in a context with a greater CINCPAC, the Commander in Chief of the Pacific plan
17 to reinforce our allies. Now, remember to this day the bedrock of this specific
18 relationship is the US Japanese treaty, the oldest and the strongest and our commitments
19 to defend Japan with MacArthur in 1945. So, during the sixties much of the United States
20 foreign policy's containment of China was predicated upon a number of proliferation of
21 US bases throughout the Pacific interlinking and the underpinned structure of our allies
22 through the South Vietnamese, the Filipino's. Please keep in mind, also in 1965 is a
23 tremendous culmination of communist attempts in Indonesia. Some people say, "Ah the
24 Vietnam War this and that," but for me, with a focus and a sensitivity to the things Asian,
25 a tremendous victory of the United States in 1965 by promoting the Jakarta government
26 was able to defeat the PPK, the Indochina communists. That saved Indonesia. So, one of
27 the little sort of things of, "Why were we in Vietnam?" Because it saved Indonesia, and
28 this all has to be seen laid out against the backdrop of the Domino Theory. There were
29 dominoes and some of them profited by that windfall and moved out of the communist
30 orbit. This also included the Philippines and Indonesia. So, maybe I'm straying from the
31 point, but I got into the South Vietnamese Marines maybe because Colonel McMillan

1 said, “Put in Fritz, and we’ll get you a job. You can also bring you secondary to us on our
2 programming matters.” So, when I asked to go to Vietnam, I received a set of orders to
3 advisory duty.

4 KC: So, it seemed like it was something that not only were you interested in it,
5 but because your previous experience, it seemed like a very good place for you as well as
6 your facility with languages.

7 CD: Yeah, it actually might have been good for a Marine Corps perspective at
8 that time and that place. I could have gone back with a US infantry battalion, but I looked
9 at it as a windfall that it was a round peg and a round hole. I had an appreciation of the
10 culture and where this whole thing fit into the Asian context. I brought a skill, a
11 secondary skill and the programming that was necessary. Besides being able to fulfill,
12 since I was an infantry officer in that time, that infantry battalion was critical for me and
13 my career path.

14 KC: All right, you find yourself in Saigon for the first three months, for the first
15 ninety days you’re working in a different capacity then maybe we generally think of
16 when we think of advisors. None the less, it’s an important one. Tell me about the
17 challenges you faced there in Saigon for the initial period of your advisory tour there in
18 Vietnam. What sort of things did you do on a daily basis? What kind of obstacles did you
19 have to have to make this run more smoothly?

20 CD: That’s a good and timely question. Remember, just in sheer numbers, the
21 Vietnamese Marines had two advisors per battalion. Nine infantry, three artillery. So,
22 there were twenty-four people in the field, and they were also organized into brigades.
23 So, there was a Marine advisor at each brigade level, and they had one or two helpers
24 with them. So, on the field at any one time, there were probably forty Marine officers.
25 Meanwhile, back in Saigon, there was staff. That staff had between twelve and fifteen
26 officers on there. They had an engineering advisor, it had a supply advisor, and it had a
27 motor transport advisor. And basically, a G-4 logistics advisor that overlooked
28 maintenance and motor transport and so on. In the programming capacity, I reported to
29 the G-4. So, the staff as a whole, we were co-located across the courtyard from the South
30 Vietnamese headquarters. South Vietnam Marine Corps at that time was commanded by
31 a three-star, General Khanh, K-H-A-N-H. So, the challenges on a daily basis—first of all,

1 we lived in a hotel. It was comfortable, I actually had a bed. I also had access to bars. We
2 also, as Marine officers, were part of the Navy advisory group in Saigon who had no
3 curfew all. My Army counterparts had to be in every night at twelve, wherever they were
4 in Saigon. The Vietnamese Marine officers were understaffed. And those who were back
5 in town when that battalion was in a down period, had caught lunch on liberty at night.
6 So, we got to see a lot of Saigon nightlife which really made time go by. During the day,
7 my preoccupation with the program and my colleagues was trying to assist the South
8 Vietnamese Marines in basic staff functions and coordination. The Vietnamese Marines
9 were a little different than US Marines. They were lock, stock, and barrel, part of the
10 South Vietnamese Navy. Every time they wanted money or equipment, some had a
11 Vietnamese Navy had to play a role in that and that was difficult to work with service to
12 service. What our challenge on the staff was, particularly in the logistics business, was to
13 try to force them to make the overall national logistics system work for them. They would
14 constantly come to us, "Can you get this for me, and can you get that?" Some advisors
15 thinking they were doing the right thing and actually would go into a Chinese word called
16 cumshaw. "Oh, yeah. I can get you some plywood. I can get you some tin sheets." So,
17 they would circumnavigate the system and short circuit the system by running around and
18 scrounging these things for the South Vietnamese Marines. Not big pieces of equipment,
19 but just the basic things you need to operate a basecamp for plywood, barbed wire,
20 sandbags. Instead of making them, which is harder, use their burgeoning supply system
21 that was just beginning to come online as a nation. Remember, one of the problems for
22 the South Vietnamese was that when we got there, we imposed upon them our military
23 logistics system. I had seen all the nightmares with that, eighteen months earlier out at
24 Long Binh. I also understood that. I had my contacts in the junkyard business. But the
25 United States made a strategic mistake in terms of saying, "Let us look at this thin, fragile
26 force which is beginning to emerge the Vietnamese Army, Navy, and Marine Corps, and
27 even in the Air Force. Let us try to build them a logistic system which is flexible, not too
28 heavy, responsive that could work to their needs." That's not what normally happens.
29 Rather, each of the services were grafted on to the US sister service and all the paperwork
30 that came with that huge, cumbersome, bureaucracy and different hierarchic levels was
31 what the Vietnamese was put in as a client that had to sink or swim in that particular Air

1 Force, Navy, Marines logistic and supply system. So, there were many gaps, hiccups, and
2 inability to get the right amounts of equipment into the hands of the needy, in my case,
3 the Vietnamese Marines at the right time and the right quantities. To make sure none of
4 that equipment was stolen or misplaced. The idea of maintenance was just almost alien to
5 the Vietnamese. Their idea of maintenance was to throw it away and go ask the
6 Americans for a new one. So, trying to get any spirit of maintenance taking care of their
7 toys, hand me downs were okay, was very difficult in the Vietnamese forces. In a way,
8 you could never blame them because they were constantly in the field to learn these skills
9 and to put them into practice when they're fighting for their existence was very difficult.
10 Some Americans never learned that. They treated the Vietnamese as sort of little brown
11 friends that were sort of just customers rather than trying to appreciate what their unique
12 situation was and how in all our might and majesty as Americans, that we can somehow
13 better provide them with the resources necessary at that time for their success.

14 KC: And, of course, I would assume a culture of the Americans providing so
15 much over the years anyway that there was never any incentive to try to learn to fix
16 things because the Americans would unquestioningly and unhesitatingly, until toward the
17 end, provide those things.

18 CD: Right, I'm going to share with you a story that I learned on Taiwan. When
19 once a Chinese officer—now, keep in mind the Chinese had German advisors in the
20 thirties. The Chinese, only on Taiwan, to this day still goosestep. The story went like this,
21 “You Americans make terrible advisors.” I said, “Well, why is that?” He says, “Well,
22 when we got a flat tire, the Japanese would come and they'd teach us once. If we didn't
23 learn, they'd hit us with a cane. The Germans would teach us once, teach us twice and
24 they'd kick us. The French would come and teach us once or twice and they'd just leave.
25 You come, you teach us once or twice and then the third time you say, “Get out of the
26 way, I'll do it myself.” (Laughter) And that type of spirit of the frustration of Americans.
27 When they see something broke, if the host couldn't fix it or do the right thing the
28 American way, we would get exasperated and say, “Get out of the way, I'll do it for
29 you.” Just to make sure it's done right. So that permutation ran throughout the advisory
30 effort. Do it the right way or don't do it at all. The Vietnamese kind of sensed that.
31 “These Americans, they'll take care of it.” First of all, their priority was their own troops'

1 lives and safety and that they could come back every four or five months to see their
2 families. Somehow, despite that, they were very brave people that knew they were
3 engaged in the national (struggle) with the north for at least a decade. So, the United
4 States wanted to help us on the periphery by fixing our toys for us and doing these things.
5 Be my guest. It was a reticence to learn and it wasn't promoted. They got promoted in the
6 officer corps by their bravery, not by their maintenance ability or the logistics skills.

7 KC: There's not a lot of incentive for them to learn those things.

8 CD: Right, and so many of my colleagues, American marines were good, solid
9 infantry officers. We sent good staff officers, we sent good engineers, good supply
10 officers to try to help them. But that role in Saigon on the staff was somewhat muted
11 from the start because the Vietnamese were not available. They did come over, or my
12 staff colleagues would make the rounds to their staff counterparts. The staff counterparts
13 would hand them a list and say, "Can you get the following for me?" And he would be
14 frustrated with my staff advisor. He said, "Wait a minute, have you tried the Vietnamese
15 system? Have you worked with the Vietnamese Army to get this maintenance request?"
16 "Yeah, we tried. That didn't work. Go get this for us." So, the staff tension was generated
17 out of—a degree of staff tension, not between individuals, but the system. The staff
18 tensions were characterized by frustration by the American advisors. And two, the
19 Vietnamese tended to be nonchalant and could care less because they knew in the final
20 analysis the Americans, in terms of supply management and maintenance were not going
21 to let them fail. So just to get out of the way and the Americans will fix the stuff, or
22 they'll get us through stuff. So, life on the staff was nine to five. We played volleyball
23 every day at noon, and we would play often with our counterparts. We towered over
24 them, but they were out there. So that was sort of the high point, to play volleyball with
25 the counterparts and the Vietnamese and Marine advisors. Colonel Tief was a good senior
26 Marine advisor. Colonel Tief, by the way, had been a naval attaché to Italy. So, he spoke
27 beautiful Italian, but he understood the issues when managing and working with a
28 counterpart system. You could see he had his frustrations working with the Italians. So,
29 the Vietnamese, to him, all professional and all respect, he still had the patience
30 necessary to work with the given and his counterpart structure. The Vietnamese profited
31 by his and Lieutenant Colonel McMillian's presence, the rapport among the staff was

1 correct and cordial with the Vietnamese. You got to wear their uniform. Except, in
2 Saigon you ate what you want when you want. There's another thing, the cuisine, the
3 Vietnamese cuisine in Saigon was superb. Never had a bad meal.

4 KC: You mentioned Saigon a couple of times. You talked about how things were
5 a little bit more open for you. Describe Saigon, 1970 to 1971. What was Saigon like
6 then? What sort of things did you see and do?

7 CD: Saigon itself was a bustling metropolis. It probably, at that time, was built by
8 the French for a million people. It probably had three million to four million because of
9 the refugees and the implosion of the agrarian suburbs onto the city itself. It was
10 crowded; it needed a coat of paint. The telephone system, the wires. By the way, it's the
11 same way with telephone wires. When it rang you never knew who was on the line when
12 you were speaking on the telephone. It was a crowded bustling city, it had the French
13 architecture, it was laid out with parks, it had a beautiful, new, which today is called the
14 Reformation Palace, but the Presidential Palace was a first rate. I had never gone into the
15 palace, but we'd walk by it every day on the way to work. But it was a city of history.
16 The post office, which it's still at today, was designed by Peter Eiffel, the guy who
17 designed the Eiffel Tower. So, if you were sensitive to the French architecture and took
18 the time to see that the French at been at this laboring since the 1880s, in a colonial way,
19 but it was laid out like a French town. Of course, I could go over to Cholon, and you
20 could see the heavy imprints of overseas Chinese. Which the word overseas Chinese
21 means flower bridge, *Hoa Chau*. Flower bridge." There was a vibrancy in Cholon which
22 characterized other Chinese oriented communities throughout Asia. Singapore, Taipei,
23 Kaohsiung, Hong Kong. They were all vestiges the way the policies which drove Cholon,
24 how it was managed on a daily basis. In the old age, Cholon, by the way, the Vietnamese
25 government was pretty successful. Chinese New Year in Saigon used to be thirty days.
26 Now, around the world Chinese New Year is only three days. But in the old days, you
27 would settle in for thirty days. That was just starting to evaporate in the early seventies up
28 for a long Chinese New Year. But it was an Asian city built on a French structure, and I
29 thought it had a lot of charm. It still had a little hole in the wall restaurants so you
30 could—and everybody would be riding around on their Vespa transportation. There was
31 lots of noise in the city, but every day you had access, if you wanted to. Baguettes,

1 French bread. There were bakeries. The French had inflicted baking into the South
2 Vietnamese. The South Vietnamese diet is a well-known secret. To me, it's southern
3 Chinese food. Which, a cuisine, the sprinkling of the French experience from baking to
4 soups was all present and you could find wonderful little restaurants in and around
5 Saigon. Now, occasionally that would be broken by a siren or a hand grenade going off,
6 but the only way you could get killed in Saigon was to fall out of bed and impale yourself
7 on a chopstick. It's a very safe place. Now, there were others who were not advisors.
8 Now remember we wore a South Vietnamese uniform. We had carte blanche, we could
9 go anywhere we wanted at night. Those who were on the curfew or were just new to
10 Saigon, they always saw shadows and something sinister about the town and preceded
11 about town very cautiously. And armed, because I was part of the Vietnamese effort, I
12 felt somewhat protected by the uniforms, which was well respected when I went around
13 town with that uniform. I never tried to dishonor it in anyway, but I basked and enjoyed
14 the recognition of that uniform by the Vietnamese people. So, it was a great town. In
15 many of the streets it was overcrowded, it needed paint, the electrical wires were just in
16 shambles, but they worked. The airport was on a town called Tan Son Nhut. It was a
17 major, major airport with aircraft coming and going. On the fringes of town was MACV,
18 Military Assistance Command Vietnam Headquarters, which was a three-story mini
19 Pentagon with BOQs (bachelor officers quarters) outside of town. Not that far out, but on
20 the fringes by Tan Son Nhut Air Field where hundreds of Army officers and staff officers
21 worked and later reported back to Washington, and so on. Some of them never even
22 getting a chance to go into Saigon to share what I was given in terms of a very rare
23 opportunity and inside to the Vietnamese culture. I enjoyed that opportunity and I would
24 have liked to have seen that culture succeed.

25 KC: Now, you've talked about how much you've enjoyed the Vietnamese culture.
26 You talked about how you enjoyed this position and staff there. You found it challenging,
27 all of these things. Nonetheless, as a Marine advisor, did you desire to get out in the field
28 with Vietnamese Marines?

29 CD: Oh, absolutely. Remember I knew that I was assigned a temporary penance
30 by Colonel McMillan and Colonel Tief. "We need you right now to help get our
31 programming and logistics program with CINCPAC on track. When you clean that up

1 and fix it, we'll let you go to the field. Then you're on recall if we ever need you and the
2 program goes haywire again." Which you designed. I thought that was a good deal. I
3 said, "Okay." So, after a couple of months, you're free. You can now go to the field. I
4 proceeded to the field with the 1st Battalion the entire time. Only once and they were right
5 on the mark. They pulled me out of the field, they said, "Pack up, get on the next plane
6 from I Corps. Come back to Saigon, you're on a ticket tonight to Hawaii to go to a two-
7 day conference to fix the program in Hawaii and then come back, back to the field."
8 That's what happened. There I was in I Corps eating grass soup for breakfast. By night I
9 was on a plane to Hawaii and spent two to three days in Hawaii which was just a shock
10 for me. Then back to Vietnam and back to the 1st Battalion all within in a course of five
11 days.

12 KC: The price you pay for being a visiting fireman, I guess.

13 CD: But they were also two seasoned veteran officers who understood, because I
14 was an infantry officer, I needed to be in the field to display those credentials so I could
15 continue on as an infantry officer that had been in the field and assigned with fighting
16 Vietnamese units and not just being abused on the staff because of a skill I had brought
17 from a previous assignment.

18 KC: All right, now you're going to be assigned to the 1st Battalion. Describe for
19 me, you're coming into the 1st Vietnamese Marine Corps Battalion. Who was your
20 counterpart? Again, you're with the 1st Battalion and as I understand it, the battalion was
21 largely split into two companies with the battalion commander leading two companies
22 and the XO generally leading two companies, as well. Was this your experience?

23 CD: Yes, I was inserted individually, I didn't meet them in Saigon. I had met
24 them right away in the field. I showed up and my relief departed. It was a very brief
25 change. I was introduced to the battalion commander and his executive officer. As we
26 would travel, I met them, and it was in a rainy season. I was just getting pressured. When
27 it starts raining, it just rains, but we started right in the rain. The way they would operate
28 was in columns. Particularly in the jungle areas of the mountainous I Corps. It gets cold
29 there at night. People think of Vietnam as jungle, but there were times in an ambush
30 where your teeth are chattering it's so cold. In terms of traversing, their tactic was to split
31 the battalion into two files. The battalion commander and his senior counterpart was one

1 file of two companies in line. The junior US advisor would go with the XO to the
2 battalion and your remaining two companies and Headquarters Company in a line. So,
3 you might say traveling in the jungle we were two lines separated by maybe a few
4 hundred yards or occasionally one line was in trace of the other until we reached the next
5 firebase or area where the felt they were going to deploy at night. One story that
6 characterizes for me. I was on the third day of patrol in I Corps and we were in an area
7 where there were large crater holes from B-52s that had been full of water from the rain.
8 You know, maybe four or five feet of water with some of these huge craters. Which were
9 just random craters. The front of my column I heard these grenades going off and I ran up
10 there trying to encourage my counterparts to find out what the hell was going on and
11 probably say something about tactical supplies, we're supposed to be quiet in this area
12 and why were people throwing hand grenades? Be he saw me coming and he laughed. He
13 said, "Don't worry, there's no VC around here. We're just fishing. There are actually fish
14 in these ponds." So by throwing grenades they would stun these fish, small little
15 minnows. Again, their diet in the mountains had no fish and they loved their seafood and
16 operating down in the Delta. So, to be able to get small fish and then be able to get them
17 on the fire at night, for nutritional value of those small fish, they thought that was worth a
18 tactical tradeoff for throwing hand grenades. The idea, at that time we were traveling with
19 two separate files: one commanded by the battalion commander and the other by the XO.
20 Moving around jungle trails up in I Corps fishing.

21 KC: You've already mentioned the basic set up of things and how you were
22 welcomed and how you enjoyed your time with them in respect for the Vietnamese
23 Marines. Tell me about coming into the unit. You've got to replace an American Marine
24 Corps advisor. What kind of relationship did he have with the XO and maybe even with
25 the battalion commander? What kind of relationship did you build on? What sort of
26 things did you have to change? What sort of things did you do differently or the same?
27 Describe that relationship for me.

28 CD: Well, when I arrived it was very clear to me that I was on trial, they were all
29 watching me. I had to do the right thing. I also was very thankful that my presence and
30 acceptance was due to the hard work of six or eight people before me, my predecessors
31 with that unit who had been helpful to them and was treated in a soldierly way by people

1 who were thankful for their presence. So, I was riding on their coat tails. So, the first
2 thing I tried to do at my counterpart, an interesting little man who was very dynamic for a
3 South Vietnamese and had a lot of hands on. He was smacking and pushing a lot of his
4 troops. There was a catastrophe in his personal family. Within the first six weeks or so,
5 we went back to Saigon. He had a young son who he had sort of a baptismal that he
6 invited me to. I went out to his shack. They lived in a place called Dian, D-I-A-N, but the
7 D is pronounced like X. Dian, which was out near Long Binh on the northeast portion of
8 Saigon, that was the Vietnamese Marine basecamp. They lived in very modest shacks,
9 nothing special. It almost reminded me of Indonesia, but they were very poor. We had
10 one advisor who was on the staff. His name was Gene Harrison who the people at MACV
11 would always come out to see Gino. Gino's project and everybody who came to MACV
12 was wheeled out to see Gino. He was the pig farmer. He was trying because he was from
13 Arkansas or whatever had a skill with pigs. The Vietnamese Marines, we thought at that
14 time, could be of help to them by building them, you might say, a commissary system.
15 Dairy, by raising and showing them how to raise a pig farm with some of the troops and
16 their dependents in the rear would, in some small way, add to their diet, reduce the price
17 of what meat would be on the civilian market, and by having their own interdepartmental
18 sort of dairy. Gino was the pig farmer. So, everybody from MACV had to come out and
19 see Gino's farm with the pigs. I mean, people would come from MACV and get off the
20 plane, and the press would come out and so on. But the true intent of that project was a
21 good one. It tried to set up, you might say, the basic beginnings of a commissary/PX
22 system that they could raise among themselves and help their diet. I went out to see my
23 counterparts who had lost a child. The child had died two or three weeks after birth. So,
24 there I had been to the birth party and then I was invited back for the funeral. By my
25 presence at the funeral, that built up a special bond between him and I that carried on
26 during our relationship. By doing the right thing, that's all an advisor would do. To
27 demonstrate prudence when necessary and to step forward and do the right thing.
28 Transcend all linguistics issues. They know and you know in conscience what is the right
29 thing to do at the right time. But by just being yourself and practicing tradition and
30 virtues of truth telling, honesty, and integrity, integrity, integrity I was quickly able to
31 build an acceptable level of rapport with my counterparts.

1 KC: What was the Vietnamese Marines' general impression of Americans that
2 you could tell?

3 CD: What was the general impression of Americans?

4 KC: Yeah, what did they think of the Americans?

5 CD: They didn't share that much, but my own personal instincts were that the
6 Vietnamese Marine Americans, the advisors, the Americans who were there and then the
7 advisory capacity to them and wore their uniform were one of them. All the other
8 Americans in MACV and so on, those were the Americans, but you, because you wore
9 their uniform and you ate with them three times a day and you worked with them and
10 went to the field and same hardships and so on and share a beer and talk stories and had
11 an interest in them, you weren't an American. It was a most an interesting distinction. But
12 when you were part of them, you were not subject to criticism. They would mouth off
13 about, "The United States this, the United States that." Not in a bitter way, but the point
14 is they differentiated between you as an advisor—oh, it was not lost on them. When we
15 would pass an American advisor, who was an advisor to their Army units. For some
16 reason, the US Army did not spend all day long with their counterparts. And when it
17 came time for food, many of the American advisors would bring their own food. They
18 would eat separately from the Vietnamese. This, to them, was a major tactical mistake. It
19 was not lost on them. That is the Vietnamese Marines, how their advisors lived and slept
20 as opposed to the Vietnamese Army who had advisors that were nine to five and ate their
21 own food. They didn't appreciate that, and they didn't respect it.

22 KC: I've heard other people who were in your position say that the Vietnamese
23 counterparts could be a little standoffish because they anticipated that maybe the
24 American Marine advisor would be there just to advise and to be more than just that
25 connection to firepower, to artillery, to air that they watched the Americans and said,
26 "Okay, what kind of approach is this guy going to have? Is he going to try to tell me what
27 to do? Is he going to advise me, is he going to sit back?" Were you aware of maybe that
28 kind of dynamic with your counterpart?

29 CD: No, I had a wind full of them. My individual case, anybody who could read
30 tombstones in Vietnamese secretary knows a little about Asia. Because he knows little
31 about Asia, he knows how Asians act. He understands the Confucian relationship

1 between brother and sister, senior to junior, when to speak, when not to speak. They
2 assumed that I understood the Confucian principle of relationships. In Asia, everything is
3 based on relationships. Nothing, nothing can happen in Asia if you're in the sales
4 business until you have rapport with your counterparts. I watched later in life, in
5 business, I watched people race into Asia with contracts in one hand and pens in the
6 other, "Sign here." Nothing happens. You need to establish your rapport and understand
7 your relationship in reference to the whole. I had heard stories about some Americans
8 who transgressed that line and tried to command the guys' battalion for him or did
9 something tactically without his approval. They probably paid a terrible price in terms of
10 isolation or abhorrence. But in my case, I was quite lucky again. I was expected to fit a
11 mold of my predecessors and also understanding the Asian virtues in for integrity and
12 command relationships or having the presence of mine. When he was chewing out his
13 subordinates, I would go get lost. I would not be there to watch him chastise a junior.
14 That would mean his loss of face that he had to castigate one of his own in the presence
15 of foreign guests. So, just bringing to bear the common principle which I had awareness
16 of for three years on Taiwan in that environment, there is a very close relationship again
17 between the Chinese and the Vietnamese ethical relationships in terms of rapport and
18 what constitutes face. By then, it became natural to me. I don't know if that answers your
19 question.

20 KC: Yeah, absolutely. All right, now you are up in I Corps. You're with the 1st
21 Vietnamese Marine Battalion. Take me out on a typical patrol.

22 CD: Okay, we were operating just in the shadows of the towns of the
23 demilitarized zone. It's due west of Quang Tri and Cam Lo and so on. I'll be operating
24 out just a little south of the old Vandergrift Marine Base in Nui Ba Den, a mountain. On
25 patrol we would walk from Cam Lo. It's a two and a half day walk up the back side of
26 the Nui Ba Den Mountains. The Nui Ba Den Mountain is about twenty miles due east of
27 Khe Sanh, but it is a critical juncture in Route Nine that you can look down and observe
28 everything on Route Nine going east, west, and you can look due north about eight
29 minutes and see the Rock Pile. There was a firebase there. By then, fire bases were well
30 established in I Corps. So we would walk to that fire base and have an entire battalion up
31 there. There would also be South Vietnamese Marines artillery battery. So, the battalion

1 would operate there and they were also able to provide that battery security and also that
2 battery would be that artillery fan. The range of that gun, which was nine miles, they
3 could patrol safely within the fan scope in that battery from nine miles in any direction.
4 Without having to resort to artillery or supporting arms from the United States or other
5 friendly reliance. What I'm saying, they had their own guns, and they could talk directly
6 to their own guns. So, we would man that fire base. There was fire artillery missions and
7 then we would go down in company-sized patrols off that mountain in different
8 directions laying ambushes. It's usually anywhere from five to seven days in the
9 company just doing lots of saturation patrol in that area. That would go on for about six
10 weeks depending on the weather and then we'd move to another firebase or be
11 redeployed elsewhere. Let me best characterize it. There were days in I Corps where you
12 would be looking for Indians all day long. No Indians. There would be other days in I
13 Corps where you weren't looking for Indians and there were three behind every tree.
14 During that period of time when I was with the 1st Battalion—remember, this is just nine
15 months prior to the Easter Offensive. It was relatively quiet in I Corps. We had our
16 firefights here and there and so on, but only in the buildup in February of '71 did we start
17 to receive a lot of resistance and there were Indians behind every tree. Then this
18 culminates Operation Lam Son 719. But prior to February '71, patrolling that winter in
19 February of '70 up in I Corps was somewhat ironically for I Corps. I thought benign,
20 given my '65 experience and then after Lam Son 719. So the patrolling was routine, it
21 was not heavy combat, but it still had to be done and you had to have troops out there
22 saturating the area.

23 KC: So, you're out for four or five days out on patrols. Then you go back to your
24 base camp. What do you do when you get back into your firebase? What do you do when
25 you get back in?

26 CD: Back into the firebase?

27 KC: Yes.

28 CD: Refurbish ammunition, try to spend a lot of time with your boots off. You
29 know, because of the rainy weather you always have to worry about immersion foot,
30 cleaning your weapons, and listening to the radio. See, at that time there might have been
31 four or five other Vietnamese Marine battalions all located west of Cam Lo doing

1 patrolling or up toward the DMZ. So, on the radio net—now remember, these brigades,
2 three battalions reported to a brigade. Like the brigades were numbered 147 which
3 usually represented 1st, 4th, and 7th Battalion. So, 147 is the brigade that looked over the
4 1st, 4th, and 7th Battalion. So, I would have my radio and my radio operator, and I
5 shackled codes so I could report to my counterpart at the brigade, usually a major. The
6 status of the battalion, how many people. You know, like I say, these little Vietnamese,
7 when it rained for three or four days and no resupplies, their clothing was ragged, and it
8 was just rotting off of them. So how we were going to fix that. Or a lot of people were
9 just sick with head colds or flus and influenza and so on. How I could, somehow, on the
10 next available helicopter covering that fire base, if someone could send me five hundred
11 aspirin would sure help the cause. Now, keep in mind, this is worthy of comment. During
12 that time, all the Marine aviation was gone. Our aviation, the US Marines with these
13 Vietnamese battalions. Our aviation was solely supported by US Army aviation. They
14 were magnificent. There was a concept of that time in the US Army, you had flying
15 warrant officers. That means warrant officers weren't exactly your Marine Corps pilot.
16 Your pilot, even helicopters, had eighteen months of training in Pensacola whether fixed
17 or jets and so on. Whereas the average Army warrant officer was only twenty-one years
18 old, had about four months of training, and there he was, driving a Huey helicopter. He
19 didn't have an instrument card and wasn't really qualified to fly at night. What he lacked
20 in skill that the Marine aviators proudly had, he made up for his balls. They were fearless.
21 I remember one time when we were stuck out during this period. A tremendous
22 hurricane—a typhoon caught us and the battalion was just ravaged with sick people while
23 in route. I had an Army warrant officer come in and pick up seventeen troops and take
24 them all out. He did that five times in a tough zone. He broke a helicopter. He said,
25 "Don't worry, I'll be back with another one." I wrote the guy up for a DFC
26 (Distinguished Flying Cross). I thought his aviation skills were a little wanting, but he
27 sure made up for it in terms of willingness and just a great skill, daring. Unfortunately the
28 Army as peace time came around in the post '72 period, the Army phased out the warrant
29 officer program and went back to having more seasoned pilots and commanded their
30 aircraft in Army aviation. During this period of time in I Corps, '70, we were solely
31 supported by Army aviation operating out of Quang Tri City. There's an airfield there by

1 young warrant officers who were fearless. I remember one evening up in Nui Ba Den. In
2 order to make a fire, the Vietnamese would take the pellets, would go to support artillery
3 and when you put a round in a 105 howitzer, they would put in this bag of ignition. There
4 were these little pellets which created this burst of the artillery rounds. They would
5 sprinkle these on wet logs and ignite them. This ignition would be so powerful that it
6 would start the wood on fire, and it would allow them to make a small fire, allow them to
7 cook the rice that they somehow kept dry. One night, a young Vietnamese Marine with a
8 pocket full of these pellets in a sack bag walked by another ongoing campfire and it
9 exploded in his pocket. He was burning to death, so they were able tame him down. He
10 had also wounded another person. So, there was two of them and another guy that had
11 suffered this hand injury in the same fire. This is just making a fire trying to stay alive to
12 cook. Now the problem was you're on top of this mountain which is, I don't know, I'd
13 say five thousand feet, and it's fogged in. How do we get these casualties out? So, we
14 worked the system where I was able to navigate the casualties down the side of the
15 mountain to get below the cloud cover. We were able to direct the artillery batteries on
16 supporting hills to fire illumination shells at two thousand feet, spaced every hundred
17 meters like a line. So that some warrant officer explained to him what was being done,
18 would fly through the clouds solely looking for these flares placed in front of him at two
19 thousand feet on a straight line for so many miles and then be able to drop down below
20 the clouds and evacuate these three people. That's the kind of pilots we had then from the
21 US Army. I was very proud to serve with them. And we did that, we got those three guys,
22 and they lived. I had been able a couple of months later back in the basecamp at Saigon, I
23 was able to meet them, they had burned and one of them burned horribly, but they were
24 alive thanks to the efforts and coordination of a young warrant flying aviation warrant
25 officer.

26 KC: That's a great story. Was there a particular patrol that you went out on with
27 the 1st Battalion that stands out to you in terms of the activity or the enemy you
28 encountered or a particular fire fight? Is there any one that stands out?

29 CD: At that time in I Corps, no, not really. It was just constant patrolling, a lot of
30 sniping. Not until Lam Son 719 did things really start to heat up. We're throwing that
31 period, let's say, November through January 1970 was just a cold winter. I think the VC

1 were the same way. It got cold for them, too. Just to be able to survive through the winter
2 and then look forward to some sort of spring offensive might have foremost in their
3 planning and the name of the game was to stay healthy and maintain so the levels of
4 contact patrolling—oh, yes, one patrol very much so. We were on a patrol, and again I'm
5 with the company commander of the XO. We run across this guy on the trail walking
6 toward us. We gush this guy. He's a North Vietnamese surgeon in the North Vietnamese
7 Army. He had been walking three days east from Laos to run because he only wanted to
8 surrender to a Vietnamese Marine battalion because he had known as a South Vietnamese
9 Marine that at least they were possessed by some valor and soldierly spirit that they
10 would treat as well. Now, when I radioed back to my brigade to say, "Guess what. We've
11 got a guest here and he's a North Vietnamese. I have a special request." "What's that?"
12 "Well, the battalion commander wants to hold onto him for a day or two to talk to him."
13 The brigade commander said, "Oh no, we've got to get this guy back to Saigon. He's
14 going to be a gold mine." It turns out, he had been five years in Laos as a regimental
15 surgeon with the North Vietnamese Army. The battalion commander wants to keep him
16 because they're both from the same hometown.

17 KC: Really?

18 CD: Yeah.

19 KC: Isn't that something?

20 CD: Yeah, well you see historically, many of the South Vietnamese Marine
21 officers were born or had strong ties to the north. Ironically, this guy stayed with us for
22 about a day and a half when I met him. A young man about forty, looked in pretty good
23 shape and wasn't beat up or anything. Through the interpreter and the radio operator, he
24 was able to share some stories, which I'll get to in a second. They wanted to talk, sort of
25 like a civil war. I can imagine that was my recollection. It was like watching somebody
26 from Atlanta with somebody from the North during our Civil War and they wanted to
27 reminisce for a while before that person moved onto stockade or whatever. But we
28 chatted, we kept this guy for a day, and a half and MACV somehow found out and were
29 going crazy that they wanted to get this guy back from Saigon to interrogate them. We
30 treated him well; we gave him the food we had. I sort of sat on the periphery of that
31 conversation while the battalion commander and the XO chatted with him on terms of

1 hometown, where he went to school. In their own way, I think he probably did a job
2 better as an interrogator of what that surgeon's unit was going through. These stories
3 came to me sort of secondhand. He thought that the North Vietnamese was terribly afraid
4 of the B-52 coming down the trail. That they had tremendous streaks of malaria and
5 casualties from the Long Haul. Most Americans, who were in Vietnam, had no idea,
6 none, about how big Southeast Asia is and what the trails and the mountain networks
7 through Laos down the Ho Chi Minh Trail were. It is quite a journey, even without the
8 harassment of American airpower or known tribes or whatever. But just a physical
9 journey of coming from, let us say, a starting point of Hanoi, all the way down through
10 Laos into the Ho Chi Minh Trail to be able to come out behind Da Nang or Khe Sanh was
11 just a physical challenge. It made the Appalachian Trail pale by comparison. So, we
12 listen to his stories of field medicine and treating the wounded and the sick. All this time
13 with artillery H&I, harassment and interdiction fires going off all around him, I thought
14 was noteworthy. So, I had respect for this North Vietnamese surgeon. No less than he had
15 purposely sought out a South Vietnamese Marine unit to which to surrender because he'd
16 know he'd be treated like a soldier before his final internment down to Saigon. I found
17 just amazing. So that was kind of a highlight of patrolling about Christmas of 1970.

18 KC: Now, what became of this doctor? How long did he stay?

19 CD: He stayed with us two days then a special helicopter was sent in and the
20 battalion commander made sure he sent an officer with him as far as that helicopter down
21 to Quang Tri and to make sure that he was probably put on a C-130 en route back to
22 Saigon for further interrogation. I never heard of him again, nor did the battalion
23 commander ever mention him. But the very fact that he was a North Vietnamese and
24 shared a hometown relationship, meant the battalion commander said, "Well, we're just
25 going to delay the process a day or two until we've talked to him." I found that just
26 amazing.

27 KC: Yeah, that is really cool. Well, why don't we stop there for today, Colonel?

28 CD: Okay.

Interview with Carmine DelGrosso

Session [5] of [6]

Date: 2 November 2010

1 Kelly Crager: This is Kelly Crager continuing an oral history interview with
2 Colonel Sean DelGrosso. Today is November 2, 2010. I am in Lubbock, Texas, on the
3 campus of Texas Tech University and the colonel is joining me by telephone from his
4 home in San Clemente, California. Okay, Colonel, when we left off last time, I think we
5 had you on the edge of the operation known as Lam Son 719 in early 1971. If you would,
6 please, take me through that entire operation. And I mean start from the second you find
7 out about it through the operations and intel. Take me through every last bit of it that you
8 can recall.

9 Carmine Delgrosso: Lam Son 719, let me start about November 1970. I was in the
10 field with the 1st Battalion of the Vietnamese Marine Corps. We were operating in I
11 Corps in some pretty tough weather in the rainy seasons and it gets quite cold in those
12 mountains. Just sort of the area called Nui Ba Den Mountain, which lies about twenty
13 miles due south of the Rock Pile just as Route 9 turns west toward the Laotian border. It
14 was somewhat quiet in terms of contact and there were lots of patrolling. Then, all of a
15 sudden, because it was in the fields, began to hear word of a major Army buildup. So
16 then through the month of November and December and January, I was learning this
17 from some aviation, US Army warrant officer pilots who I would chat to, and they would
18 stop at different LZs to drop off supplies to us. The Army was planning to bring quite a
19 few helicopters as far south as the Delta to support an operation of the South Vietnamese.
20 My deduction by Christmas of 1970 was that the Vietnamese were going to be allowed to
21 do a major operation, probably against targets in Laos. This would be the first visible sign
22 of Vietnamization and all the equipment that we had given and provided to the
23 Vietnamese forces of Vietnamization in the field. So, for me, it seemed to me it was
24 going to be a test, could the South Vietnamese, on their own, hack it against selected
25 North Vietnamese targets in Laos. Now, Laos for the South Vietnamese at that time was
26 sort of like Disneyland. A place that was, and they've heard about. So, to be able to even
27 just walk around in Laos. Operate even in a non-combat situation. Psychologically, for
28 the South Vietnamese forces, no less the South Vietnamese government, would have

1 been a very visible strategic sign of their ability to succeed under Vietnamization, do
2 something on their own, and a positive sign that they actually had the ability to maneuver
3 and therefore was a step in winning and beating the North Vietnamese. So, with this
4 major test there was a buildup through most of January. Later I had heard, this was
5 probably toward the end of February, that a number somewhere in the neighborhood of
6 probably seven hundred to eight hundred aircraft had been mustered by the US Army to
7 support the Vietnamese in their efforts. I guess for the United States to support them with
8 aviation transport, it was just sort of a slight crutch, an aid that they weren't going to do it
9 all on their own. Because the Vietnamese wanted to fly into Laos. Now, you have to bear
10 with me. I have to describe the geography and the terrain. When you leave Khe Sanh and
11 move west, it's sort of like, let's use the analogy a keyhole. So, to get over into Laos
12 about thirty-five miles, the strategic target was—and there are two spellings of Tchepone
13 or Xiton one was, X-I-T-O-N, and on maps it was T-C-H-E-P-O-N-E, Tchepone or
14 Xiton. Now, was there anything there? Well theoretically Xiton or Tchepone was the last
15 switching yard, as you might say. As in a railroad analogy. For the North Vietnamese
16 moving stuff down the Ho Chi Minh Trail through Laos and then come out with exit
17 points in Vietnam. So, the ability to control or destroy or disrupt the North Vietnamese
18 efforts in the Xiton/Tchepone area, would have been a major psychological step for them.
19 To achieve this, I believe I recall the number of—they had dedicated seventeen Army
20 battalions that would be flown by US forces from landing zones as far east as Quang Tri,
21 Cam Lo, and Khe Sanh. Through this keyhole, which was about twenty miles long with
22 mountainous terrain on both sides three thousand feet, to be flown through this keyhole in
23 the Tchepone area. The lift began probably sometime in late January. Now, to move
24 seventeen battalions by air, and when I mean air, I mean Chinooks and Hueys, UH-1Hs
25 and Chinooks, took quite a bit of time. In retrospect, I would have said it probably took
26 five to seven days using US Army assets and the minimum South Vietnamese aviation
27 assets. To move these seventeen battalions into the Xiton area—now Xiton terrain, once
28 you get out of the mountains in Khe Sanh, becomes relatively flat as is a good portion of
29 that part of Laos. Meanwhile, the North Vietnamese, were observing this whole thing. So,
30 when the Vietnamese landed their seventeen battalions—the South Vietnamese Marines,
31 were to be a strategic reserve. This was going to be, for the most part, an all-South

1 Vietnamese Army show. The South Vietnamese Marines there, about six battalions there
2 at the time, were to be the strategic reserves and to serve as anchor points to secure the
3 flanks. One was in a geographic area called Coroc, C-O-R-O-C, its high ground which
4 overlooks this keyhole corridor into Laos. Now, when the operation started in early
5 February, the rains were setting in and that was not good. The South Vietnamese, again, I
6 was on the ground with one of these Vietnamese Marine battalions up near the Laotian
7 border and it was my sensing that what happens, that they poured seventeen of these
8 battalions into Laos that sort of landed sporadically like oil spots. Wherever there was an
9 LZ, they'd dump the battalion. So, what you had is seventeen battalions, like oil spots,
10 that upon entry into Laotian areas. I heard all the stories of glee with some of the higher-
11 ups in the South Vietnamese government to include Nguyen Cao Ky came and
12 proclaimed victory. They failed in their planning to establish legitimate strategic targets
13 on whether to occupy, control, or destroy them. There they were, spread out around Xiton
14 and they failed to interlock their positions. Meanwhile, the North Vietnamese, and I
15 believe it was two infantry divisions. I think, I think one was 326B. I can't recall the
16 number of the other one. Sensing this, simply got online like a steamroller and began to
17 push east, overrunning each of these small oil spots. These oil spots South Vietnamese
18 units failed to consolidate their position or link up and reinforce each other now began to
19 suffer the steamroller effect on two Vietnamese divisions pushing from west to east back
20 in that general direction of a Lang Vei, the border town, on the South Vietnamese side,
21 and Khe Sanh itself. The South Vietnamese, now, did not want to walk out. They felt that
22 the US government has given them a ride to the big show in Laos and now they started to
23 ask for mass evacuation by air. Now, to put that much demand on the air assets, given the
24 weather and the rain and the fog and the panic and the inability to control their mass exit
25 stampede east, began an inability to bring artillery support to bear on the oncoming North
26 Vietnamese. Saw an almost panic-like situation. The North Vietnamese began to wipe out
27 some of these battalions and a lot of young, brave Army warrant officer pilots were
28 taking some serious hits as they were picking up. For example, an aircraft say, a Chinook
29 size could hold twenty-four Vietnamese given the weather and the altitude at that time.
30 They were trying to jam forty to fifty people on the aircraft. This resulted in a lot of US
31 aviation casualties. Again, getting back to the keyhole, the only route in and out of the

1 positions that they had temporarily occupied in Laos was on the east-west axis for the
2 American aviators. Meanwhile, the Vietnamese began to bring in what was called the
3 “golden hose,” which was the 37-millimeter anti-aircraft guns. These guns were very,
4 very effective. They could knock down planes of tens of thousands of feet. Typical
5 communist tracers, green. So, you could see these guns along that corridor and move
6 them up toward the higher ground and began to engage US helicopters to include
7 gunships that were on the east-west axis trying to move a group of South Vietnamese. In
8 my mind, seventeen battalions is probably somewhere in the neighborhood of over ten
9 thousand men. I would estimate that in a North Vietnamese division was probably seven
10 thousand men at full strength. They were probably from fifteen thousand Vietnamese in
11 gross numbers engaged against ten thousand retreating and broken, non-coordinated
12 South Vietnamese forces who were trying to move along the ground, waiting for aviation
13 to come get them. It was only broken and non-coordinated South Vietnamese forces who
14 were trying to move along the ground or waiting for aviation to literally come get them.
15 There was only at the last minute when they started to really break badly to South
16 Vietnamese forces. They started to exit by foot along ground rounds in a very broken and
17 ragged formation. So now we’re witnessing even Hueys at ten thousand feet by the
18 golden hose and into the aircraft. We’re witnessing a complete route on the ground with
19 the South Vietnamese. They mass exited. In my mind I just had a brief historical thought,
20 “I guess this is what Dunkirk was like.” Meanwhile, ourselves, the South Vietnamese
21 Marines were serving as a strategic reserve and as an anchor point, started to get a
22 sensing that, “My gosh, if these North Vietnamese keep coming east and we don’t get
23 told to move back or occupy alternate positions further east, we could get swept up in this
24 rabble run. Then we would be outflanked by the North Vietnamese.” A lot of message
25 traffic now flies between our battalion our brigade control and South Vietnamese
26 headquarters in I Corps. It reaches a point where the South Vietnamese Marines have a
27 battery, an artillery supporting battery on Coroc, C-O-R-O-C. It’s a very high piece of
28 ground just located right inside South Vietnam, almost on the border that can provide
29 artillery, if need be, into Laos to support the fleeing South Vietnamese forces. That
30 battery attached to the Brigade 147, which was composed of the 1st, 4th, and 7th
31 Vietnamese Marine Battalions orders those guns, because there was no air transport that

1 can move the guns, because all the transports are dedicated to the evacuation of the South
2 Vietnamese Army despite those guns. This is very painful for the South Vietnamese
3 Marines that they have to leave. They have a very US Marine attitude towards equipment.
4 They take care of it, they don't leave it in the field, and they don't abandon it. But it was
5 an amazing decision for them to spike those six guns so that they're not falling into the
6 hands of the North Vietnamese and then to literally break down and begin to E&E,
7 escape and evade, west to link up with friendly forces of the 147 Brigade. The word still
8 doesn't come by the middle of February. So, what you have is these South Vietnamese
9 Marines getting a little nervous now in the sense that they're not getting decent coherent
10 directions from senior Vietnamese headquarters. They're watching the possibility
11 growing that they could be enveloped by the North Vietnamese who are just having a
12 field day. Again, I use the analogy steamroller, rolling up these non-coordinated South
13 Vietnamese Army battalion in haste and port arms fleeing east. US aviation is now taking
14 some serious casualties. It almost reaches the point—afterwards I find out in February
15 when the US Army decides to count their losses of these seven hundred, eight hundred
16 aircraft that were employed and brought up from all plots of Vietnam South of the Delta
17 to support the South Vietnamese by aviation. If you could bring a piece of the aircraft
18 back, that doesn't count as a loss. So, some pretty interesting accounting in terms of what
19 the actual losses are of US aircraft began to stir a curve. Meanwhile now, the rainy season
20 is nearly in full force. What I mean by rain, in a twenty-four-hour period, it would not
21 rain maybe four hours. So, to be able to fly in that foggy weather and rain, there are some
22 very brave, very brave US aviators trying to assist their South Vietnamese counterpart in
23 a mass evacuation under pressure taking a lot of anti-aircraft fire from the oncoming
24 North Vietnamese force moving at a pretty good pace from Laos in pursuit into South
25 Vietnam. The distance involved from Xiton to Khe Sanh is probably about forty miles.
26 The North Vietnamese are covering ground, fighting, and destroying Vietnamese Army
27 battalions. By estimate is probably ten or twelve and suffered severe battle casualties and
28 rendered incapable. Probably three, maybe four, are completely destroyed. This rages all
29 through January and into early February, I believe. My recollection in cases, but my
30 sensing is probably by mid-February, it's all over from Lam Son 719. What was probably
31 allowing two, maybe three-week operation of Phase 1 moving into Laos, two,

1 engagement with the Vietnamese, and three, the withdrawal phase probably told me, or
2 my sensing tells me of about three weeks. During that time, I'm on the ground with the
3 Vietnamese Marine battalion. We're moving our position against the strategic reserves or
4 not engage. Although, two of my colleague battalions do move up closer to the Laotian
5 border and move into Laos, again, to provide a strategic blocking point. The US advisors
6 are not allowed to step foot in Laos. They can, however, assist in delivery of ammunition,
7 small supplies, and medicine to the South Vietnamese on the ground. We have a few
8 Marine majors that were battalion commanders and went to my mind with Major Bob
9 Martin and Carlisle with the 2nd Battalion, Major Carlisle. All these gentlemen spend a lot
10 of time on helicopters flying in and out to support the South Vietnamese Marine unit just
11 inside of Laos at the strategic reserve around Coroc. They never set foot on the ground.
12 That's the ground rule, no US ground advisory effort will occur. The only US
13 participation is supposedly aviation assets. All casualties for the battalion are not out of
14 the ordinary, but again, sickness with the weather and cold, pneumonia. The rest of the
15 brigade is in about the same situation. The South Vietnamese Marines only participate in
16 the strategic reserves, get to witness this whole debacle, and serve and assist in the
17 evacuation and link up with some South Vietnamese Army units and bringing back
18 stragglers to safe positions for the east in Vietnam. To sum up tactically, this is brilliant
19 by the North Vietnamese who manage early on to see that the South Vietnamese had no
20 strategic plan except landing in Xiton. So, the jumping up and down like Hitler would
21 celebrate with his railway car and then realizing that they were unwilling to walk out of
22 Laos, but somehow the Americans could put them in by air and had to take them out by
23 air. The Vietnamese had a good sensing in it because I think the ability to be able to
24 intercept communications was superb. They also, then, tactically on the ground aligned
25 their two divisions and in a piecemeal fashion, defeats the South Vietnamese forces at a
26 staggering loss of probably three or four battalions and the moralization of taking about
27 ten to seventeen battalions and a fight for quite a long time. So let me stop with that. That
28 is my recollection of the battle of Lam Son 719. With a guy on the ground, sort of
29 witnessing this, not fully engaged as an advisor with the North Vietnamese, but in the
30 battlefield area with a great vantage point to see it all, particularly the aviation debacle.

1 KC: What, in your opinion, as you're looking at it from the time, what in your
2 opinion was the primary problem? Why did Lam Son 719 go so wrong?

3 CD: There are probably three or four reasons. The first was a poor choice of
4 strategic and tactical objectives. What were the Vietnamese going over there to do? For
5 example, to reestablish the flag? Break the North Vietnamese Ho Chi Minh Trail pipeline
6 for a set period of time? Xiton again, is just a village at that time. It's nothing much. It's a
7 spot on a map that just had magical fascination for that. It was just a spot on the map
8 inside Laos that they could demonstrate the ability to, in a swaggerly way, with new
9 American equipment and support, have freedom of maneuver into Laos. So, one is poor
10 choices for the strategic objectives, two is the weather, poor timing on the weather. Three
11 is the complete reliance on US Army aviation for transport into the battle area. Four, no
12 alternate plan. No strategic plan of link up. Once you put seventeen battalions on the
13 battlefield, they should be at some sort of a tactical formation or reinforcing each other
14 rather it was like putting oil spots out there that was not coordinating. Put oil and oil
15 together in order to safely defend your territory and preserve your force. They did not do
16 that. Fifth was their decision that they would not throw these oil spots together and form
17 a column and then fight their way back into Vietnam and conduct a retrograde, under
18 pressure, very not easy to do, but rather they all sat individually in place waiting for the
19 American aviation assets to come deliver them and then pick them up. Sort of like a day
20 *Deus ex machina*. That was totally wrong. And during their consolidation phase, they
21 really didn't have any. They didn't use phase lines or whatever. Lastly, they failed to
22 appreciate the rugged terrain in that part of Laos and South Vietnam and how to have
23 alternate ways out of the battlefield area. There was only one way in for them and one
24 way out. Which is not a good situation.

25 KC: Right.

26 CD: So those are about six vulnerabilities there, fallacies, or failure on the
27 battlefield from a strategic level. That is, whoever is in charge of those seventeen
28 battalions, probably I Corps, whoever the South Vietnamese general was at that time, was
29 I Corps. It failed to perform any of the performance and steps and there were about six or
30 seven reasons. Now, it was painted Lam Son 719 as a great success politically in the
31 press and it was linked to how well Vietnamization was going. The United States

1 government, I believe, used that as cover safety of our overall withdrawal—a drawdown
2 of US forces. In South Vietnam is just going swimmingly because the South Vietnamese
3 could now carry the load themselves. Not only that, they're carrying the fight to the
4 enemy and able to get over to Laos and cut the Ho Chi Minh Trail pipeline. On the
5 ground, that was not the case. To me, Lam Son 719 was a failure.

6 KC: Do you think the entire operation as it was conceived was faulty? That why
7 Laos, why Xiton, why there at that time? Did that make sense to you when you were
8 hearing about what it was going to be?

9 CD: Again, I go back to it and on my poor choice of words that Xiton to them in
10 Laos was sort of like a sacred hunting ground. No South Vietnamese had been there, and
11 it was like going to Disneyland and going to the top of Mount Everest. They were just so
12 infatuated that they actually climbed Mount Everest. They got over into Laos and were
13 able to cut or temporarily disrupt the Ho Chi Minh Trail at a very critical artery. See, at
14 Xiton—sorry I used the words switching yards. It's where supplies are coming from
15 North Vietnam or went from North Vietnam themselves due west into Laos and then in
16 Xiton, it was decided how these supplies would go down the trail further to a point even
17 with Da Nang and then go west or receive all the way down into Cambodia. So, for them
18 to be able to turn the switch off at Xiton, which was the source of their national
19 toothache, they perceived as a great victory even though they only occupied Xiton and
20 kept the North Vietnamese silent for three days. They were in the state of absolute
21 euphoria. During those three days, I believe that the North Vietnamese assess the
22 situation correctly that the South Vietnamese had extended themselves too far from their
23 supply line. That the only way in and out of this position of putting that many battalions
24 into Laos was about forty to fifty miles further west than their supply line could handle.
25 The only way you could supply or evacuate was by air and the North Vietnamese
26 correctly assessed that, so they brought pressure to bear by bringing in their anti-aircraft
27 and shooting down a lot of US helicopters. Remember, escaping and evading is very
28 difficult given that that pipeline is only one way in and out of Laos through the
29 Vietnamese terrain at that juncture it is an east-west corridor surrounded by five thousand
30 foot hills on either side. So, one thing that we mentioned is the absolute bravery some of
31 these young Army aviation pilots who in the face of great danger, terrible weather

1 conditions who—often fog and the 37-millimeter golden hose flew very bravely and
2 professionally.

3 KC: What was the net effect of the failure of Lam Son 719 as you saw it in
4 Vietnam? I'm not talking about the Marines that you were with or about the ARVN, but
5 what was the net effect of this failure?

6 CD: It starts from the lowest level in my battalion and at the brigade level. By
7 now, there was a decision to move all nine Vietnamese infantry battalions to I Corps. So,
8 for the Vietnamese Marines they said, "Wow, our entire force and large chunks of the
9 airborne were going to I Corps." It looked like the South Vietnamese government took to
10 both of their positions and employed their strategic reserves which was the airborne and
11 the Marines into I Corps. The initial outcome of 719 was all Vietnamese Marine units
12 were going to be in I Corps and probably for a very, very long time. At the next level up,
13 the South Vietnamese government went through an assessment, and it wasn't much in the
14 press, it was almost a blackout on this startling effect, they probably lost four or five
15 battalions. They were wiped out by the North Vietnamese. The US Army scrambled to
16 play a numbers game with just how many helicopters were lost in the world and the US
17 press and in the foreign press, Lam Son was kind of painted with mixed results. The
18 initial part of it was covered with great fanfare and seizure of strategic South Vietnamese
19 targets in Laos and their temporary occupation of a number of key towns in Laos. I think
20 that spread a lot of hope among the South Vietnamese people. The outcome, they were
21 gone for two to three weeks and became very murky. You really had to dig, I would
22 suspect as a historian or somebody who followed, to get the actual numbers or results and
23 how did the battle unfold and who won? A lot of that was just cut off in the press. But the
24 reverse side of that in the US press, Lam Son 719 began to be painted maybe by the
25 administration as the first successful evidence that Vietnamization was working. This
26 might have had some impact on the Paris peace talks at the time. I don't know, it might
27 have put some leverage back in the hands of Kissinger and company. It is fact that if
28 given your right around the coaching, equipment, and support, the South Vietnamese
29 could hack it on their own. But for me, the reality on the battlefield was, the ineptitude of
30 the South Vietnamese forces to successfully conduct or analyze and understand what was
31 happening to them. That there was a need for successful retrograde actions in mass that

1 had to be coordinated so that they didn't lose great chunks of their forces. They failed to
2 do that at the cost of probably four or five infantry battalions. So, I would think the dead
3 was probably somewhere around two thousand. Quite a few South Vietnamese dead and
4 then again, a staggering toll on US Army aviation.

5 KC: What toll did it take on the Vietnamese Marines that you worked with?
6 Granted, they were there just there as a strategic reserve as you mentioned. But what
7 about their morale, for example, as a result of this failure?

8 CD: I don't think, at the trooper level, maybe I'm going out on a limb here, but
9 the troops didn't care because they didn't like the Army. And two, they didn't physically
10 see this, so many of the South Vietnamese troops. And third, what did they care? Their
11 unit was okay. They didn't suffer any casualties. It was just another day in the life of a
12 South Vietnamese Marine. Which is an amazing concept that these people can fight for
13 years without any degradation to their morale, amazing. But now at the senior level, at
14 the South Vietnamese Marine Corps, I would say the battalion commander, regimental
15 commander, they realized that this gap of North Vietnamese pouring east all the way to
16 Khe Sanh, could be repeated and created a back door into South Vietnam that sort of bent
17 the flank of the whole DMZ. Remember, all their forces had been postured, basically, in
18 the north-south axis below the DMZ. They had been fighting incoming artillery tactics.
19 They had a linear perception of life., that the attacks would come from North Vietnam
20 itself directly to South Vietnam. But by Lam Son 719, they realized that the whole
21 posture of I Corps forces, along the demilitarized zone, the flank could be bent and that
22 there was now a side door that could be used freely, like a swinging door, by the
23 Vietnamese to move east rapidly and undermine and refuse to flank of the South
24 Vietnamese government from Khe Sanh moving east. They realized the South
25 Vietnamese Marines, that somebody had to plug that hole. That somebody had to be there
26 to ensure that the South Vietnamese positions in the DMZ area and northern I Corps and
27 eventually Quang Tri, the city, were not undermined by enemy forces coming from Laos
28 into Vietnam. This is really hard to digest because at this time, the ability to bring US
29 strategic might, that is B-52 strikes that could seal that if need be. It was iffy, we were
30 playing turn on and turn off the B-52s as the function of political events going on in Paris
31 with Le Duc Tho and the bombing and so on. So, they previously enjoyed a ten-year

1 period of bringing US strategic might to bear and assist South Vietnamese strategic and
2 tactical efforts on the ground. Now, it became on call. It wasn't routine. They would call
3 and the US would provide B-52s and other weapons. So, for the South Vietnamese, they
4 realized that their fate was going to be in I Corps for a long time. Their ability to go back
5 to the South, the Delta, go back to Saigon where they were stationed, the ability to see
6 their families, it was now going to be rationed. And maybe one battalion out of six or
7 seven up in I Corps, would be rotated back on some sort of a basis to be worked out. But
8 rather their normal rotation of six to eight weeks in the field and back to Saigon. That on
9 the personnel level now was going to be in jeopardy and they were going to be in I Corps
10 for a long time.

11 KC: What kind of effect did that have on your Marines?

12 CD: Again, Lam Son 719, you only realized the magnitude when you're on the
13 ground and that maybe every day from those events in late January, early February, you
14 start to piece this together, "Huh, it's going to be a long time up here in I Corps." The
15 entire South Vietnamese Marine Corps which, historically, spent most of their time in the
16 Delta and I Corps, is now in five or six corps. Is now going to be shifted and we're going
17 to spend a lot of our time in I Corps. At that time now, probably three South Vietnamese,
18 all their brigades, all their line battalions that were configured into three infantry brigades
19 were going to be in I Corps. So, we're going to be in the field for a very long time. We
20 just took that as show biz. Again, psychologically, someday someone's going to tap me
21 on the shoulder and say, "Your tour is over, go home now." So, we all had that
22 psychological trap and we knew we were going to leave as part of the normal routine. We
23 could only appreciate the magnitude of what was going to happen to our colleagues who
24 were going to spend a lot of their days up in I Corps non-stop and the psychological
25 impact that might have had on was very difficult to gauge.

26 KC: All right, now pick up the story in the aftermath of Lam Son. Where were
27 you, what was going to be your routine now? You're going to be up north now. What are
28 you going to be doing?

29 CD: So, this proceeds on through about April for me, but things quiet down
30 dramatically. We're just back at Nui Ba Den which is sort of a mountain complex
31 halfway between Khe Sanh and Cam Lo. So, it would be a two-day walk from Cam Lo

1 due west. We do a lot of normal patrolling; we have artillery pieces up on top of the high
2 ground. So, the firebase concept. So, we occupied some firebases in the sense that from
3 where Route 9 turns due north to the Rockpile, the old Vandergrift, or what the Marines
4 called Vandergrift Air Strip in an area. From about there, west, is all mentally conceded
5 that the North Vietnamese are back and they're en masse. But east of that line, where
6 Route 9 bends at, we are the forward units of the South Vietnamese. Nobody in Khe Sanh
7 or Lang Vei anymore. Everybody's out of Laos. So, the units that are furthest west of the
8 South Vietnamese government, are the Vietnamese Marines. And it is a quiet period.
9 What you would have thought to be an exploitation phase of the Vietnamese to having
10 saving victory at Xiton and Lam Son 719, would it continue to push east the first forces
11 they would have run into was a couple of South Vietnamese Marine battalions. That
12 didn't happen. The rain stops, it's now April, things are dry, things are hot, and there's a
13 big lull. Now, I've never taken the time to correlate that lull starting about April into
14 correlation of political events that are beginning to unfold around the Paris peace table. I
15 mean, we spend a year where we try to figure out if the table should be round or square.
16 A correlation of events on the battlefield, and in terms of intensity, was high points and
17 low point in the dialogue in Laos. I've never run an analysis of that. So, to answer your
18 question, it was quiet again. So, in April or May start to be quiet again which was starting
19 to take fire again from north of the demilitarized zone. A lot of harassment and
20 interdiction fire unplanned, unnamed, but its incoming fire. You take a lot of that which
21 is just a standard day on the battlefield. So, April and May are kind of quiet. Now, I'm
22 programmed to go home in July. At that time in May, the end of May, Colonel Tief,
23 Lieutenant Colonel McMillian started having programming problems again with their
24 military assistance program. So, they tell me, "We're pulling your ticket. You come back
25 early, and you work on programs again." So, to maintain my identity as an infantry
26 officer, which I am, I did have a good flight, so I don't physically fight it or try to delay
27 or alter the plan. So, I say, "Okay, you meet me back in Saigon and you're the colonel,
28 you're the lieutenant colonel, that's what I do. So, I have a counterpart now, come up
29 from Saigon named Captain Frank Izenhour, I-Z-E-N-H-O-U-R. Frank was a—his father
30 was a major general in the Army, but he was a good Marine officer who later died a
31 young death as a captain, non-battlefield. But Frank comes up and relieves me as an

1 advisor and by May 15th, I'm on a plane back to Saigon to spend my last six, seven weeks
2 in the Saigon area because it's a cyclical thing, military assistance programming of
3 equipment. So, I go back and I do that for about a month and pack my bags. By now, by
4 the way, I'm only a 135, 140 pounds. Or six months running around I Corps, I lost
5 probably about twenty-five pounds. So, I go back in, and I wish all my colleagues the
6 best. In my mind, the war was far from over. Although, the South Vietnamese suffered a
7 great tactical strategic loss in Lam Son 719. It is, by no means do I see at that time, any
8 mass collapse of the South Vietnamese government. Any major strike of the North
9 Vietnamese into Vietnam. I see nothing on the scale of Tet. It's just sort of cyclical war.
10 So, by my snapshot in May of 1971 is, the war is grinding on, Lam Son was an
11 aberration. It was not enough auspicious one for the South Vietnamese, but it is by no
12 means, signal a strategic defeat or invasion by the north which occurs, ironically, eight
13 months later with the Easter Offensive in 1972.

14 KC: You mentioned that Frank Izenhour came to replace you, I believe you said,
15 as an advisor there to the 1st Marine Battalion. What sort of information did you pass onto
16 him? How did you make that handoff to him?

17 CD: Frank is coming, I'm up on the firebase, the helicopter lands, Frank jumps
18 out, and we have about two to three days together. I introduce them to the person I know
19 living on top of the firebase. The battalion commander lives on one side, the XO lives on
20 the other. We're all within fifty to eighty yards of each other. Quietly, when I can, I get
21 Frank off to the side and explain after the introduction of who those people are. My
22 experience with them, some of the do's and don'ts. He's a professional officer Frank;
23 he's on his second tour also. He knows the ropes and he was selected, and volunteered,
24 for his duties. The grade, the caliber, and the cut of the people, of the US Marine officers
25 that went to South Vietnamese were superb. The guys are out there doing their job in
26 their top ten percent; fifteen percent of our Marine Corps. Frank and I—I had known
27 Frank previously. I think the world of him. My problem is my embarrassment when I
28 have to tell the South Vietnamese, "Oh, by the way, I'm leaving." Now, I have the shelter
29 and the protection of the senior Marine advisors, Major Dick Hughes who stays on. No
30 loss of continuity between the battalion commander and the senior Marines. I had the
31 junior advisor replaced by Frank. That's a little easier to take. My sensing is that the

1 South Vietnamese battalion commander—they don't like it when there's instability in his
2 unit, but as long as he's senior Marine advisor, that they know each other and the rapport
3 is correct and cordial. As long as that bond is in place, a rotation of a junior advisor,
4 that's all part of a day's work. And that battalion commander had been in this business at
5 war from probably ten years and constantly involved in the battlefield. So, it's nothing
6 new, it's just the way life is. He didn't lose any of his men. He's not being overrun, he's
7 just losing a junior Marine advisor, but he still has the senior one. Which is the length to
8 US firepower or whatever is available for US forces.

9 KC: Now, you're going to leave country in, I believe you said it was July of '71.
10 At this point, did you think it would be possible or did you even want the opportunity to
11 come back to Vietnam one last time?

12 CD: I put in a big stink. I wanted to extend, and I put in the papers to extend, but
13 standing there protesting in May, that I wanted to extend with the South Vietnamese
14 Marines. The senior Marine advisor and the assistant colonel's chief and Lieutenant
15 Colonel McMillian, both of which later became general officers in the Marine Corps.
16 Both brigadier generals. They had known that I'm still the single guy. And I haven't set
17 foot in the United States except for ten days since 1968. You know, it was March of '68
18 when I went with the Chinese Marines. So, they refused and they just about read me the
19 riot act. There was a need for me to go back to the United States because I had almost
20 completed two and a half, almost three tours in Vietnam. It's 1971 and I'm not thirty
21 years old. I spent most of my time in Asia with all the Chinese. I'm putting words in their
22 mouth, but they look at me as I'm too Asiatic. I don't know my own Marine Corps. I've
23 spent most of my time in Asia engaged in Vietnam and Taiwan. There was a need for me
24 in my normal progression to go back to my next set of orders to Amphibious Warfare
25 School at Quantico. There's a need that I go back in the classroom and learn the skills
26 that I need to eventually go back into the US Marine infantry battalion and into a normal
27 infantry battalion tour. So, they think also that maybe I'm a little tired. I spent too much
28 time in Asia and it's a good thing. They sort of politely override and sit on me. No, they
29 will not approve. That is, they will not give me a recommendation to headquarters Marine
30 Corps that I'd be allowed to extend. So, I figured "Well, they're really out for my better
31 judgment. They're out for my interest." I like both of them immensely and they've been

1 around the Marine Corps for a while, so I said, “Well, better roll with whatever they say.”
2 I took their advice and thought of letting my request for extension die on them. I just heat
3 up the clock during June in programming and work and pack my bags and leave in July
4 so I could be sitting in a classroom in Quantico by August 1971.

5 KC: What was it like to be back in the States? Even before you start the
6 Amphibious Warfare School in Quantico, what was it like to be back in the States?

7 CD: Well, remember I’m a single guy and my choice in women for the last few
8 years had been, let’s put it this way, National League. So, to meet some American ladies
9 has gotten interesting and kind of enthused to see my family. I haven’t seen my family in
10 three and a half years. I’ve got a brother running around Vietnam as a Marine lieutenant.
11 My mother has two sons, both of them are in Vietnam. So, I think by being home, it takes
12 a little pressure off my mom, who was a very good Marine. And she don’t like what’s
13 going on in the States and in San Francisco and so on. Going out to relieve that family
14 pressure, there’s only one son in Vietnam at a time. I think that’s a joy to my mom.

15 KC: Sure.

16 CD: I particularly enjoy being on leave back in the States. Food—I’m not really
17 affected so much by the way so much of journalism has painted. The Vietnam vet comes
18 home and there’s no respect and he’s spit on and he’s considered an outcast by society. I
19 endured none of that. I just come home and I get ready to go to Amphibious Warfare
20 School. That kicks off in August and have a great time. When I get to the classroom,
21 there’s a hundred other guys like me.

22 KC: That had all been over there for quite a while?

23 CD: They’ve all been over there two and a half, three tours. So, there we had a
24 hundred guys sitting in the classroom. Probably all less than the age of thirty. What are
25 they going to teach us? Are they going to shave my head and send me to Vietnam? The
26 guys that are teaching us are good officers and so on, but for the most part, none of them
27 had the combat experience sitting in a collective way in that class. When you look at a
28 hundred guys with probably two hundred fifty years of combat experience looking at you.
29 It’s very hard to teach and a smart school staff would say, “Let’s get the students
30 involved. Let them do the teaching. They’re the guys that will be writing the manuals and
31 just lived through it. But that does not happen. I can only remember two or three, one-

1 hour lectures where a student was asked to come up and present his unique insight or
2 discuss and lecture on the field that was unique that he had lived in Vietnam. And the
3 school fails to take advantage of all that combat experience sitting there. I found that
4 pretty amazing.

5 KC: I'm sure.

6 CD: The Congressional Medal of Honor winners in the class, nobody ever invites
7 them up to the stage. So, what you had was a class. Now, like I say, most of us knew that
8 this war was going to go on for a while. We were just home to recharge our batteries, get
9 healthy, and get ready to go in again.

10 KC: Right.

11 CD: So, the class as a whole, given that the school unwillingly rejected the
12 experience embedded in the class to make use of that. They were a pretty salty class.
13 They didn't take much off the instructors. There was sort of an attitude. "What are you
14 going to do? Shave my head and send me back to Vietnam?" I'm going anyhow, but
15 they're all professional officers who just thought this schoolhouse was a lull to recharge
16 your battery and get ready to go back again.

17 KC: As someone who's spent almost three full tours in Vietnam and you're sitting
18 in the classroom, you've talked a little bit about just what the environment was like there.
19 What sort of things are they trying to teach you in Amphibious Warfare School?

20 CD: In Amphibious Warfare School, in the Marine Corps heritage, the
21 cornerstone of the Marine Corps has always been the amphibious assault or amphibious
22 operation. Now, on paper, an amphibious operation is not against an opposed landing.
23 The US Army has conducted more amphibious operations than the Marine Corps. But
24 amphibious assault was the Marine Corps' bread and butter back then, at least on paper.
25 We hadn't had one since Korea and it was a lot of amphibious during the sixties. There
26 was a little bit in Vietnam, not as much that could have been used. Just like there was no
27 tactical use of US paratroopers in Vietnam. There were jumps, but they were over a safe
28 feel. And there was never any contact with the enemy on landing. Same with the Marine
29 Corps. There was only one or two amphibious assaults in Vietnam where Operation Star
30 Light in late '65 where US Marines went into shore, immediately running into North
31 Vietnamese units. For me, going back in the classroom, the Marine Corps was trying to

1 make sure that all those students were either, A, proficient in a very difficult form of
2 warfare. Probably the most difficult in terms of coordination. They were training
3 everybody in their classroom to go onto the next step which was to be the S-3, the
4 operations officer for the infantry battalion. Of those hundred students, probably thirty of
5 them were aviators, but the whole idea was to catch the student into the amphibious
6 assault environment in all its manifestations. All the planning documents to write in
7 operations order that would be successful timely and realistic. To get the dust off—I
8 remember now from five years running around Asia, I never had to attend any classes, I
9 never had to give any classes. Normal life of an infantry battalion has a lot of classroom
10 time. A training schedule has to be written weekly, daily, all those kinds of processes or
11 all kinds of calls go off. Or you do what is required and so on, but in military life there
12 was a normal routine of an infantry unit that has to occur on a daily basis and a training
13 schedule and qualifying new weapons and physical training. So, the whole normal life of
14 an infantry battalion school was to Quang Tri with that again and to infiltrate the
15 principles of amphibious warfare and how to write, collate and put together amphibious
16 warfare operation plan. That was the essence in the syllabus and the final testing that you
17 could give in certain conditions, formulate and put together amphibious operations order
18 which was critiqued by the school staff and knowledge and so on. And there was little
19 corollary courses. Nothing ever on Vietnam; minimal. But rather this was just making
20 sure that the oncoming generation of Marine officers did not forget their heritage and the
21 nuts and bolts about how to conduct amphibious warfare. We did that for six months.
22 And then from there I was assigned to 1st Marine Division in Camp Pendleton which was
23 now in the process of just coming back from Vietnam. They had retrograded it from
24 Vietnam in the 1970s. I remember the 1st Marine Division. Yeah, when I was coming and
25 going into I Corps in 1970, the 1st Marine Division was getting ready to go home. So now
26 you had a Marine division that had been at war for about six years and who spent their
27 primary interest on accountability. Their gear, their weapons, what was old, what had to
28 be identified and were missing some equipment. So, they were in a refurbishment mode.
29 They also, there was a tremendous drawdown by 1971. The 1st Marine Division only had
30 three operational battalions. Normally on paper, the Marine division had nine battalions
31 but only three of them were operational. The other six were cadre or were at very low

1 manning levels. I was lucky enough to get into one of those three battalions. So, my life
2 from '72 to '74 was helping carry the operational commitments of the entire division.
3 Normally staff with nine infantry battalions, but we only had three. So that meant that my
4 life was either onboard ship coming ashore from amphibious operations, heading out to
5 the desert in 29 Palms for desert cycle up to the mountains in Bridgeforth, California, for
6 mountain training or cold-water training and then back down to sea. So, for those two
7 years, very rarely or all over state-side, I was never there. I was always off, like any other
8 officer, off doing a lot of time in the fields with an operational Marine battalion. That
9 school held me in good stead for Amphibious Warfare School. Why? Because then when
10 the aircraft would show up and would be talking with pilots that were in the support
11 roles, I might have known that pilot because he was in a classroom with me. By those
12 hundred people in Amphibious Warfare, that sort of became my class. Those hundred
13 officers moved with me sequentially through the Marine Corps for the next twenty years.
14 So that was my first opportunity to meet my peers and then take a look at me. So that
15 continued to, again, bump into these people throughout the Marine Corps. We all moved
16 together as a class and we worked together. We knew how each of us would work, which
17 is a very precious resource that you know the people you're working with. There was a
18 rapport and a respect and a bond for Amphibious Warfare School. We either did not
19 capitalize for a Marine Corps point of view on the lessons of Vietnam, which could have
20 been learned from that class. It gave me, personally, the opportunity to fraternize and
21 meet a hundred peers. Never knowing that these were the same peers that twenty years
22 later, when everybody was a lieutenant or colonel, we would know them. And that was a
23 bond, and it was a unifying factor. Not so much as in other services where I'd known the
24 Koreans or even in the British services, your classmates, you have obligations to him.
25 That if he were killed you sometimes, you're responsible for the children of that officer
26 which happens in the Thai Marine Corps and the Korean Marine Corps, but it's the
27 closest thing in my time to be part of a class. You know, like I keep saying the Korean
28 Marines or even the Chinese. Your classmates are the most important to you because
29 that's how you move along. Like the Class of '57 would be the class when their first
30 officer makes general the whole class celebrates. And he helps bring along other ones.
31 So, in Thailand for example, today when you say, "Oh, General so-and-so just became

1 the supreme commander.” Well, the first thing they did, “What class was he?” Meaning,
2 was he in the class of ‘57 or ‘67? Because that shines the light that, that class with the
3 supreme commander being the most famous graduating class, that class might come to
4 power as a group. So that type, not that extreme in the US Marine Corps, but it is
5 important that you recognize your classmates. These are the people that you work with
6 and maybe someday grow up and help run the Marine Corps with.

7 KC: You’ve mentioned a number of times that you didn’t think that they gave the
8 lessons of Vietnam enough interest. At the AWS (Amphibious Warfare School) they kind
9 of just glossed over it. I’ve heard other people say that. Tell me about that experience as a
10 Vietnam veteran and seeing things as closely as you did from your perspective, why were
11 the lessons of Vietnam not promoted in a positive way to help learn, in your opinion?
12 Why did that come about?

13 CD: I think it did but let us use the prism of Amphibious Warfare School. Those
14 people had a syllabus and in a short period of time, let’s say twenty weeks, they had to
15 get that syllabus into your skull. They had to produce a graduate that understood
16 amphibious warfare. The construction of amphibious warfare documents so vital to the
17 process and prosecution of amphibious warfare. So, when you took the time available,
18 let’s just say for discussion purposes, let us say that was six hundred hours in the
19 classroom. Probably five hundred hours with just amphibious warfare. It was really no
20 time to promote Vietnam. Again, the overriding purpose of that was it was a trade school.
21 And the purpose of that trade school was to teach you basic skills. Once that part of the
22 curriculum was eaten up, the hours available to allow free-flowing dialogue, the latest
23 lessons in Vietnam, then we’d look at that first. Second of all, I suspect that the lessons in
24 Vietnam were really gained among our peers at the bar. It was an extracurricular at night
25 event. So, we’d go to the bar and start drinking and playing, “Where did you serve? Who
26 are you? Do you know so and so?” Those lessons of Vietnam. That’s where they started
27 to cement. In the class itself, they knew. Like jungle drums, in a short order of time, you
28 knew who was in that classroom. When and where and what skills he had and what
29 experiences he underwent. You would seek him out and ask his opinion. So, the class
30 taught each other. There was reliance. If I needed to know something, for example, on the
31 Cobra. I had a guy next to me that had four Distinguished Flying Crosses from flying the

1 Cobra. When I wanted to know about the Cobra, what it could do, what it couldn't do, he
2 was my natural source. Of course, I took his word over any textbook. So, to answer your
3 question, sir, a trade school does not really—it's for them to fulfill their mission. Its
4 question of time is not enough time to make room for the ongoing contingency or soup de
5 jour of the Vietnam War. And secondly, the peers—learn from your peers, that was the
6 quiet message in school. They would say, "Well, I'm looking at a class here of a hundred
7 students and there's two hundred fifty years of experience. Share among yourselves, talk
8 among yourselves. And basically, that's true, that's what happened.

9 KC: I've never heard from that angle before. That makes an awful lot of sense.
10 All right, you were also with a 1st ID (Infantry Division) as you were coming back from
11 Vietnam. You talked about what kind of shape they were in. What was the morale, for
12 example, of the 1st Marine Division?

13 CD: Now, remember, the 1st Marine Division on paper is nine infantry battalions
14 and an artillery regiment. The reality of it is, it's only three operational battalions. The
15 division was trying to find itself. They had just come back from prolonged six years of
16 warfare. There were accounting processes for supplies and the counting of individual
17 equipment; helmets, blanket rolls, even weapons was rusty. The major general in charge
18 of the division was a guy named Ross T. Dwyer, and his idea was he's going to put this
19 battalion supply and equipment back in shape. He was a stickler. That guy was a five-
20 gallon water cans, all the old gas cans—this is stuff that had been rusted out, not turned
21 in. It was all going to be identified, qualified, turned in, repainted, recounted for,
22 restocked, resupplied, whatever. He was going to bring up the Table of Organization and
23 Equipment of this division. He worked hard at it and he's emotionless, but it took about
24 eighteen months before the 1st Division was up to snuff again in terms of its equipment,
25 its quality, and its quantitatively was up to snuff again in terms of its equipment, its
26 quality, and it quantitatively. At the same time now, and socially there are a lot of things
27 interestingly happening to the Marine Corps. We're just starting to go through the initial
28 throws of this affirmative action. We got a lot of malcontents from the Vietnam War. A
29 lot of people now are afflicted by social views, which is not very military. We had a
30 Project 100,000. It's almost where the court says, "You've got a choice, go to jail or go to
31 the Marine Corps." We have a lot of substandard people we have asked to lower our

1 quality control factors and it's starting to show. We have a lot of Marines with their
2 hearts in the right place, but they're not too bright. They come with misdemeanors and a
3 public record at the beginning of an underlying drug current here and there. Again, this
4 goes back to Vietnam experience. A unit that is fully engaged with their troops occupied
5 in a combat situation doesn't have drug problems. But rather where a human is idle, a lot
6 of free time, nobody supervising the troops, the troops have too much time on their own,
7 these types of troubles begin to fester. The same way in the 1st Division. The three
8 operational battalions, they're gone all the time. They're doing things Marines should be
9 doing. They're doing things that the recruiting posters advertise. Morale is very high in
10 those three units. Especially if you're a new PFC or a private. Gosh, you're getting on
11 ships, you're going to deserts, and you go to the mountains. You go to Mountain Warfare
12 Training, even going down to the Panama Jungle School. It is the rest of the division that
13 have cadre units which could not even muster even a hundred Marines a day. There is no
14 strict training schedules. So those types of units that seemed to be idle or half staffed are
15 beginning to undergo some of this social spill off that's coming over the fence of Camp
16 Pendleton from the local society starting with drugs, attitudes, short-timers, affirmative
17 action issues, and having recruiting standards to take a poor-quality trooper. We're
18 starting to pay a toll so what I'm saying, if you were to go every night to the logbook of a
19 Marine battalion where the officer of the day records the incidents and who came in
20 drunk and who was disorderly and so on. Every night in a Marine battalion, troops
21 coming back from liberty, the types of fights they're in, gang related, drinking, drugs, and
22 driving issues. Those kinds of social statistics begin to escalate somewhat. It's not an
23 easy time. Particularly, if you've had two combat tours and see what real Marines do and
24 you start to see some of these misfits that you wonder, "How did they ever get into the
25 system and into the Marine Corps?" So, you have to do what you've got to do to get into
26 the battalion. Bring it back online with a table of equipment and complete an operational
27 training dictated by the division and again, a division will never back off on its
28 commitments. They lay on the commitments of nine infantry battalions on the three
29 infantry battalions. Plus, the erosion of some of these social issues. Oh, how about this,
30 you weigh unauthorized absence (UA). Marine units during this time, particularly the
31 cadre units, they may be running up to twenty-five or thirty percent UA! I remember

1 Ross Dwyer talking one day. He came to talk to all the captains and lieutenants in
2 division and he says, “I want the UA rate to be no more than twenty percent in each
3 Marine battalion.” That’s a number we all live with. Twenty years later when I would
4 visit a Marine unit, I would be invited out there to parade or something and here’s young
5 lieutenants talking about, “My gosh, our battalion UA rate was almost five percent this
6 month?” Those young lieutenants were in shock. They didn’t realize the guy they’re
7 telling this story. I mean, your only 70 UA rate—and UA was for a number of causes,
8 some Marines had been, again, too much time in the field, too much time away from their
9 battalion or their family. Some guys, just the lure of the world, they just were gone, and
10 they took their prizes. There was none of this running off to Canada stuff. But my point is
11 that the UA rate, even though the Marine was gone two or three days, we didn’t really
12 consider him gone unless he left a note saying, “I’m gone. I’m not coming back.” Then it
13 was UA right on the spot. We waited three days before we declared them UA because it
14 had just been out with his girlfriend and spent the day drunk somewhere. A UA rate,
15 constantly in an operational battalion in the 1st Marine Division of about twenty percent,
16 was not unusual.

17 KC: What were some of the ways you tried to deal with this?

18 CD: Again, on an individual level, know your people. It’s almost biblical, “Know
19 your sheep and they will know you.” One of the things was, the first thing, the stability of
20 a unit. Remember, I had talked earlier about keeping a battalion stable before deployment
21 is the key to all training. Otherwise, you’re running a constant treadmill. You train a guy
22 and he’s gone. When the time is time to deploy, you go through unevenness. But if you
23 go through a process as a stabilized unit when nobody gets in and nobody gets out, it’s
24 locked, and you all learn together step by step, social-type problems and UA behaviors
25 tend to fade away and go away. So, one of the keys was a constant plea to the division
26 that at least, in the operational units, that if we had to go to war, those units, we would
27 have stabilization. That is the three operation battalions. I remember one time in 1972,
28 because of that stabilization, I was in the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, the commander then
29 Major John I. Hopkins, and he turned out to be a major general. We would do some
30 images. For example, one time we were called upon—they told me to form up the whole
31 battalion and get them ready to deploy, I can’t tell you where, but we’re going to be out

1 of here in ninety minutes. So, when the troops found out, my gosh, they're passing out
2 ammunition. It was like, you know "Pass the ammunition." And everyone was humming.
3 That battalion was ready to go and deploy by helicopter somewhere, we weren't sure
4 where, and watching the TV within ninety minutes that battalion would move from Camp
5 Pendleton down to the docks in San Diego because there was a potential mutiny onboard
6 the *Kitty Hawk*. My battalion, the battalion was tapped to put down that mutiny if need
7 be. Thankfully while we were in the air enroute by helicopter to San Diego we had
8 advanced units land and get ready to board, it would have been a terrible thing, think
9 about that. A mutiny aboard a US ship in harbor that never came off. But, that was sort of
10 the life in '72 for a lot of short-term contingencies in addition to the normal amphibious,
11 the desert, and the mountain training trilogy of training venues.

12 KC: Well, let's talk about this issue on the *Kitty Hawk* that you mentioned. When
13 do you find out that it is your battalion that's going to be sent and when do you find out
14 that that's what the mission is?

15 CD: That mission down in San Diego?

16 KC: Yeah.

17 CD: My battalion commander, I was at the northern end of Camp San Mateo
18 which was the home of the 7th Marine Regiment. The battalion commander happened to
19 be down at the division. He was called into the division commander's office who gave
20 him a warning order. "John, be prepared to move your battalion within two hours. I can't
21 tell you when, but I'll let you know." He walked out of the division commander's office,
22 called me up on the radio, on the telephone, and said, "Here's the guidance. I want this
23 battalion ready to go. We're going to go by air; we're going to have two rifle companies
24 first and then follow along with the battalion and have that battalion ready to go within
25 ninety minutes and the aircraft are in route. Any questions?" I said, "No, sir." And that's
26 what you do. But now, in that ninety minutes, all the processes that you've been drilled
27 and getting ready for embark, getting the weapons. Now remember now, weapons—when
28 I grew up in the Marine Corps you had a squad bay. In the squad bay everybody kept
29 their M-1 right there in visible. With fifty men in their squad, they're sleeping in their
30 skivvies and their double bunk racks. But by the seventies in the wake of the Vietnam
31 War, all weapons were in an armory. Every time the battalion wanted to train, or a rifle

1 company had to go to the field, you had to queue up in front of the armory, and each
2 Marine had to individually sign for his weapon. This normally took an hour a day taking
3 the weapons out of the armory and an hour a day cleaning them and checking them back
4 into the armory. So, all of a sudden, they say we're going to be gone in ninety minutes.
5 Just think about that event. We have to draw up all the weapons out of the armory, pass
6 out ammunition, get ready to go, get a pack on, prescribe what is to be taken and where
7 we're going to go for a day or three days. That's a pretty busy place for ninety minutes.
8 Getting ready to do that when you're talking about eight hundred men.

9 KC: How do you deal with that? Do you say there are some things we can't
10 expect to get done; there are other things we're going to have to forget about?

11 CD: I can remember that day. We have a television by then in the battalion
12 headquarters. I had one of the guys from the S-3 shop, I was an operations officer
13 battalion and constantly going through the TV channels trying to find out. It was
14 somebody from the G-2s—the S-2 the, the intelligence section in the Marine division.
15 What could possibly be going on within a hundred miles of where we were? They
16 probably knew we were going by helicopter. That was occurring, that could account for
17 this. We never knew until when we were in the air that we were going to go to San Diego
18 and be landed on a peer somewhere near the *Kitty Hawk* to move onboard the *Kitty*
19 *Hawk*. We couldn't figure it out, so we looked at the nature of the Marine Corps. You go
20 with what you have, your training, and hopefully you've put into your kit or mix or
21 whatever you take, the best available at the time.

22 KC: So, when do you find out that you could be used against this mutiny on the
23 *Kitty Hawk*?

24 CD: When did I find out?

25 KC: Yes.

26 CD: Well, I'll say, whenever the battalion commander called me up, probably five
27 minutes after he found out, I'd bring in the battalion staff and the XO of the battalion,
28 brief him on what the battalion commander said and what he wanted. Then I assigned
29 different tasks and which company would be the lead company and so on. Then we get
30 ready to go. I'm a pretty busy guy. I mean, I can't even figure out what map to take.

1 KC: Now, you've never been trained, I would assume, to put down a mutiny
2 aboard an aircraft carrier.

3 CD: No this—I'm just giving this as an example of the type of things that were
4 occurring in the '72/'74 timeframe when the American population was pretty anti-war
5 activist oriented of a very strange day when a US Marine battalion was called upon to
6 possibly put down a mutiny that was occurring on board a major US ship of war.

7 KC: That's some pretty heavy stuff.

8 CD: Yeah, we were enroute by air, and our initial aircraft had already touched
9 down, but some chaplain had talked down a Black Power-inspired unit, that the US Navy
10 was also undergoing some serious social challenges. I'd talked him down. So, the riot did
11 not come off and there was no need for the United States and that would have been a very
12 embarrassing historical moment for the United States Naval Services to put down the
13 mutiny aboard a major war ship at port in the United States. It never came off. But just
14 think of it in terms of the planning, ninety minutes earlier, unknown target, and unknown
15 direction, don't even have a map, just bring your weapons and ammunition and we'll
16 figure it out enroute. Which all goes back to planning and training and some of these
17 things you learn. For example, we were just talking earlier about Amphibious Warfare
18 School. The ability in a short period of time to create the correct documents that would
19 address contingency to developing underway contingency. If you do that, you do that in
20 Amphibious Warfare School.

21 KC: All right, now you're with the 1st Marine Division until what, '74 or
22 something like that?

23 CD: '74.

24 KC: Until 1974. You were also promoted to major in '74, is that correct?

25 CD: That's a funny story.

26 KC: Well, let's hear it then.

27 CD: When I was in Amphibious Warfare School, I was selected for major.

28 KC: This is back in '71, '72?

29 CD: Right, at that time, occasionally in the Marine Corps promotional processes,
30 there was a concept known as, "Below the zone." And then a concept called, "Deep
31 Selected." Now, from time to time in the Marine Corps, a promotion board might say,

1 “We have to pick a hundred majors, but there were some guys that were so close to the
2 zone of consideration. We have to pick a hundred and look at two hundred people. So
3 that means a fifty percent selection rate. There were sometimes when a board would say
4 or a commandant will direct that I want you to save five percent of the slots available
5 from promotion to the next grade and I want you to take that five percent and go another
6 two hundred and create a field of another two hundred numbers deep and find me the five
7 best captains in that group and they will be tacked on and accelerated, sometimes up to
8 two years with their peers ahead of them.” So that’s what happened to me in Amphibious
9 Warfare School. I was selected below the zone to major. Myself and six other officers.
10 One of which was a later commandant, Charles Krulak, Jr. There were six of us that were
11 picked up below the zone. I was in absolute disbelief. I spent the day out drunk. I didn’t
12 even come to school that day. I just got very lucky and for some reason my career to that
13 point, this board decided that myself and these six other players were below the zone.
14 Now, deep selected really means that they went down maybe a hundred, two hundred
15 numbers. In the face of criticism, there are a lot of criticisms in the Marine Corps.
16 Theoretically, the commandant has to be saved. This officer went down for at least two
17 hundred numbers below the zone of consideration and is better than the other 199 guys in
18 front of them. That’s a pretty hard argument to make. That somehow, someway, some
19 guy two hundred numbers lower, is better than 199 guys in front of them because
20 everybody has a number linear list. That’s deep selected as opposed to below the zone.
21 Below the zone they’ll pick five or six within a hundred numbers of the normal
22 promotion zone. Do you follow my logic on this?

23 KC: Absolutely.

24 CD: So, I was selected below the zone. Ha! (Both laughing) Now, to be selected
25 is one thing, but to pin them on, I had to wait eighteen months. So I went around as a
26 captain (S), which means selected for eighteen months. So, although I was very thrilled
27 and honored that that happened to me below the zone, I didn’t actually become a major
28 until maybe in 1974. So, that was funny, I had to walk around. You don’t get paid, nor do
29 you get back paid. You only get paid when you pin them on. So, although it’s a great
30 honor and that’s what the compilation of experience has happened, I did not actually put
31 on the rank and major until eighteen months later. And when I pinned them on and put up

1 my right hand, a whole promotion cycle had come and gone after me, before I got to pin
2 them on. That's the life of the Marine Corps. Sometimes promotion is accelerated as a
3 group and sometimes it slowed down. So, there I was. Let's see, I was promoted to
4 captain and was commissioned in June of '63, reported to Basic School in September of
5 '63. By January of '66 I was a captain. So, I went to captain in about twenty-four months.
6 Then I stayed a captain from '66 to '74. They say that's the best rank in the Marine Corps.
7 So, I was a captain in grade for almost eight years. Although, I had made it to captain in
8 less than two years.

9 KC: Did you think you would ever get out of being a captain? Did you think
10 you'd ever be promoted?

11 CD: No, especially—well, that was what the pleasant surprise was when I was
12 selected for major. I just thought, “Oh, this is great. I'm actually going to pin them on and
13 move on.” No, I had waited. So, thank you for asking, but that would give you some idea
14 of the dynamism created by conflict because the Marine Corps is like a pipeline. If a
15 certain class takes a lot of casualties or deaths from natural or unnatural causes, that's a
16 gap in the pipeline. That can only be partially filled by speeding up people by selecting
17 below the zone. Sometimes a class would go through that. By the way, they watched
18 these statistics quite close at the Marines because the amount of people that each class
19 should be leveled or had a certain number of offices in it by year group. Once that year
20 group and they were all commissioned in the year of '63, there are certain rates of
21 attrition; people got out, people retired, death. When you put combat in there, when you
22 get two or three tours, sometimes the initial number for that class was a hundred. Well,
23 normally in the course of the first ten years of attrition, people have change of hearts and
24 different careers. The class of a hundred may be down to eighty-five. When you take out
25 the effects of warfare and death and so on, after fifteen years, that class may only have
26 sixty-five people in it. Now, each of these classes are uneven, but the amount of numbers
27 that each class dictates how big the zone should be behind in terms of selection to the
28 next rank. So, we call that the pipeline. So, where you are on the pipeline when you start
29 and walk through the fortunes of what made that pipeline larger. Creates the size of each
30 zone to as best as the Marine Corps can keep the pipeline and numbers in the pipeline
31 even.

1 KC: Well, why don't we stop there for today, Colonel?

2 CD: Okay.

Interview with Carmine DelGrosso

Session [6] of [6]

Date: 11/03/2010

1 Kelly Crager: This is Kelly Crager continuing an oral history interview with
2 Carmine DelGrosso. Today is November 3, 2010. I am in Lubbock, Texas, on the campus
3 of Texas Tech University and the colonel is joining me from his home, via telephone, in
4 San Clemente, California. All right Colonel, we just had you promoted from the rank of
5 major. This is in the summer of 1974. You mentioned that you'd go to the US Army's
6 Foreign Area Specialist Program. So why don't you pick up the story there and tell me
7 about this program. How were you chosen for it?

8 CD: I left the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines late in the spring of '74 and a short time at
9 the regimental headquarters because I was selected to participate as the Marine Corps
10 were up to the US Army Foreign Area Officer program called FAO. That program, for an
11 Army officer who chose that path of intelligence and linguistics would be seven years. It
12 would be a year of basic language allowed possibly to go get a master's degree in area
13 studies in that region. Then they would go in-country and study the language for another
14 year. Then they might have had, like in the Asian context, they would have been given a
15 year ticket, sort of as General Stilwell in World War II to visit all their peripheral
16 countries to their target country. So, if the target country would, say China, they would
17 visit from Japan all the way from Burma, looking at China from the perspective of its
18 regional neighbors. Then after the tour in-country, then we'd go back to the desk officer
19 at the Pentagon in the Washington area on that particular country. An officer in the US
20 Army was a foreign area officer. They really knew their stuff in depth and it was a seven-
21 year commitment. However, the Marine Corps looked at it and said, "Nah, that's too
22 long." We're going to make all our other specialists a year. A year of language and then
23 we might send them for a year of advance language. So having had language and basic
24 Chinese Mandarin in 1967, I was selected to go back to Taiwan for an additional year of
25 studies, intense studies. I studied at the United States Department of State, School of
26 Chinese Languages and Asian Studies located in Taichung, Taiwan, in the Republic of
27 China. Now, my classmates, there were only seventeen students in the school. The
28 majority of them, maybe half of the promising young Foreign Service officers. Maybe it

1 was supposed to be ambassadors. A number of people from Langley, Virginia, and two
2 Army officers and myself. There were a few that were going through the National
3 Security Agency. So, we went to a school in Taiwan and studied six to seven hours a day
4 and were given State Department quarters in the evening. It was really total immersion.
5 Again, it went from very capable teachers. Moving along from basic Mandarin, for me,
6 it's probably the hardest school I ever went to because when you take the finals, you had
7 never seen the material before. You just hoped that all the hard work, particularly
8 reading, economic Chinese, military Chinese, journalistic Chinese. That when you were
9 given this course of material and all the reading you had done, gave you enough
10 experience to be able to read the new material in the final. Then for the verbal part of the
11 exam, you would sit behind a desk, and it would be five people asking you questions, like
12 a panel. It was all in Chinese and you would answer them in Chinese, or they would ask
13 in English, and you would respond in Chinese. This was all taped. At the end of that hour
14 session, the panel would just give you diving scores. They would assess a number level
15 where, on a scale of five, where they thought your Chinese was. A five being somebody
16 who had lived and studied and worked in the country for at least twenty years. So, I
17 found it a pretty rigorous academic challenge, very worthwhile, and probably the
18 toughest scholastic thing I had undertaken at that time.

19 KC: What were your scores?

20 CD: Sorry?

21 KC: What were your scores from this exam, just out of curiosity?

22 CD: Oh, I got a 3/5 in the reading and writing and a 3/5 in the spoken. I really
23 worked at it. I didn't have any family commitments. It was just me and I lived with a
24 Chinese maid, so to speak, a maid that just came and went to my house and bought me
25 some groceries. So, all I concentrated on was the Chinese language for fifty weeks. So,
26 that was 1974, but typically Marine Corps. I had gotten lucky in 1968 where I actually
27 went to basic Mandarin and then was able to go to Taiwan for two and a half, three-year
28 tour. But not this time, there was no follow-on billet as yet, so I was assigned by to
29 Quantico, Virginia, and I worked in what was then called the development center. Now,
30 Quantico basically had an education side where all the schools were located at basic
31 school and the Amphibious Warfare School. Then the development side which was

1 responsible for the development and identification for all Marine Corps equipment to
2 agree to tactics and procurement. The concept behind that was most interesting. We put
3 liaison officers at all the major Army development centers around the country, like tanks.
4 We got an officer out there down at Fort Hood, I believe. So, we had this net of research
5 and development people that could sort of stand behind the Army or the Air Force and
6 look over their shoulder. As the project grew and unfolded and was ready to be launched,
7 through our network through Quantico, we could jump up and say, “Yeah, we’ll buy that,
8 too.” So, the Marine Corps had a great windfall there. We didn’t have to spend hard
9 dollars on research and development, but rather by very professional monitoring of the
10 projects and the other services. In the 11th hour, we could make known (unintelligible)
11 and also buy in on procurement. Where it was everything from vehicles to weapons.
12 Now, this was all located at Quantico, Virginia, under the development center and I
13 worked for a series of general officers starting with the Brigadier PX Kelly, who grew up
14 to be the commandant. I finished that tour for three years under Brigadier General Alfred
15 M. Gray who eventually was the commandant. On three occasions, I had worked close to
16 General Gray. The first one was there in the development center. But my role—and also
17 the development center conducted a lot of studies. I spent the good part of 1977 as the
18 project officer and looking at urban warfare. When you look at the world, probably eighty
19 percent of the world lives within one hundred miles of the sea and has tremendous
20 implications for the Marine Corps. That the distribution and population of the globe was
21 all, for the most part, accessible from the sea. Also, keep in mind the last time the United
22 States had participated in heavy war conflict, when I started researching it historically,
23 there wasn’t much there. It was the battle of Hue back in 1968 in Tet—the Battle of Hue
24 and was a somewhat limited urban warfare. There was Inchon for the Marines back in
25 1950. There was the Dominican Republic in ‘65, but for years, the United States forces
26 have always skirted urban combat. It’s just too many factors, too many uncontrollable. If
27 one has the choice to fight in the city. Also, the types of casualties are different. Their
28 structure is different, and different weapons need to be employed in urban context. The
29 whole question of, “How do we use aviation in an urban context?” was unknown. So, my
30 role for a year was to sort of go check with the Army. How about training, too, in an
31 urban warfare. How do you train troops? Wouldn’t it be nice if you could rent a couple

1 blocks of LA? It's expensive and there was no adequate training facilities. We had little
2 combat villages left over from Vietnam in the Marine Corps, but the idea was, in an
3 organized way. I talked to most of the Army and most of our allies to include the British
4 who were very, very advanced in urban warfare, due to their Northern Ireland
5 experiences. In fact, at that time, by 1977, the entire British Army had been rotated
6 through Northern Ireland seven times. So the whole purpose for this study for about a
7 year from traveling was to go talk to the allies and gather up all the information you can
8 to catalog, qualify, and possibly make an anthology of all the pertinent urban warfare
9 documents going all the way back to the Russians in World War II, the Germans, and see
10 if you could deduce from that body a collection of documents and some hard facts which
11 could be used as the basis and identify within the Marine Corps inventory. Were we
12 deficient and what needed to get done? Particularly, at night urban warfare, what are the
13 implications? Also, in urban warfare, it appeared at that time that the type of injuries you
14 would sustain would be different from combat in an open rolling terrain and jungle or
15 whatever. There would be a lot more shrapnel. There would be wounds from electrical
16 outings. Different cuts from metal. Myself, we looked at—the communication challenges
17 with dead space. The present suit of communications equipment that we had at the time
18 did not work in certain urban contexts because of dead space. So how to shoot, move,
19 communicate and succeed in an urban context. I was given a grant and some travel
20 money to go sort that out. I found it a very interesting endeavor.

21 KC: Where did you go and how did you go about sorting it out?

22 CD: Well, I worked through the attaché net. I contacted the assistant naval attaché
23 for the United States in London, who allowed working with—of course, the British gave
24 me access to two of their training facilities. One was called Lydd, L-Y-D-D, and the other
25 is Hyde, H-Y-D-E. These training facilities are very advanced electronically and
26 challenging all the way down to the fire team level which the British call a “Brick.” That
27 is a four-man team, which is the basic fighting unit for the Marine Corps was a four-man
28 combat fire team. They would break down a unit whether it was motor transport or
29 supply battalion or basic infantry battalion. Before they went to Northern Ireland they
30 would go to those two facilities for six to eight weeks and some of the obstacle courses
31 and some of the courses were laid out and designed specifically for urban warfare

1 training and allowed a four-man fire team leader to test his squad under some very, very
2 challenging circumstances in an urban context. So, by the time that battalion was
3 organized—again, starting with the four-man team and building up the battalion-sized
4 exercises, they were ready to go relieve their counterparts in Northern Ireland and not
5 lose it in a heartbeat. What I'm saying is, six to eight months in the Belfast area would be
6 relieved by an incoming battalion and those two training facilities were able—again, gave
7 the battalion commander the opportunity to have those people all in one place and
8 focused. Starting with elementary training and working up to elementary training of the
9 fire teams and working up to sophisticated combined action teams and staff drills at the
10 battalion level. Probably the best trained before they set off to Northern Ireland. So, to be
11 able to go and be given a ticket, you might say, to go see that in action and document it in
12 a recorder and then transition and take that information back to my own Marine Corps
13 and try to put that together. Also, with General Gray at the end of that study, he tacked on
14 into me and said, "I want you to write an operational handbook on urban warfare." He
15 said, "I want you to take all the tips and condense them into a rugged little book; about
16 sixty to eighty pages that can fit in a back pocket of a squad leader so that when he ran
17 into challenging situations in an urban context wherever we were going to be deployed, it
18 might provide him a base of some ideas or some tips." For example, how thick is the
19 average brick wall around the world? We did extensive studies using some people from
20 Stanford University to go around and look at the thickness of walls. This is very
21 important because in an urban context, what you see may not be what is there. For
22 example, you might see what looks like a solid building. It's not, you can shoot through it
23 just like the old Holiday Inns. If you fired a 3.5 rocket into that hotel, it might go all the
24 way through the glass and go out the other side. So, the ability to study a city like the old
25 financial district had sediment and hard stone. Where the thickness of those buildings
26 might be six to eight feet which render most of the small arms in an infantry battalion
27 moot. So, to be able to study a town that you might be involved in and analyzing from the
28 composition of the buildings on what had greater density, that would allow the weapons
29 to be used effectively or ineffectively with positive knowledge. So, these kinds of tips;
30 the visible wall and how many subways are there around? How do you use them?
31 Pipelines, electrical fittings under the ground. You have an awareness, you might say,

1 like a fourth dimension to the battlefield in urban warfare. The concept of masking. There
2 were certain buildings that were constantly massed. How to overcome dead space. What
3 is the height of the average building around the world in an urban context? Well, if you
4 can get your antenna that height, the probabilities to successfully communicate go up
5 dramatically. So be able to pull together some very obtuse facts and synthesize them and
6 then draw some observations. This was particularly challenging because I would argue,
7 and some would disagree that the last time the United States Marine Corps might have
8 been a prolonged urban context fight aside from Hue City in 1968 was probably forty
9 years earlier in Inchon. We only passed in two days through Inchon on the way to Seoul.
10 And Seoul was kind of urban context fighting during the Korean War. So, it was kind of
11 a new field. It was an exciting project and eventually I got to work almost directly for
12 General Gray and getting some of this stuff done on paper. I found it of use, oh, I think it
13 was probably a hundred-page handbook on an art form of warfare that hadn't been
14 practiced in fifty years.

15 KC: How was that handbook received?

16 CD: Sorry?

17 KC: How was the handbook received?

18 CD: Oh, very well received. General Gray wanted to put it out as an operational
19 handbook under the aegis of development center. Across the street, the other half of
20 Quantico, the Education Center wanted to publish it as sort of a manual. So, I didn't care,
21 just as long as it got into the hands of the troops. Particularly the corporals levels who
22 needed this information and could throw it in his pack. But you know you have to stop
23 and say, at that time they had a lot of names in the study of urban warfare. The Army
24 called it Fighting In a Built-Up Area, FIBUA, F-I-B-U-A. Some people called it MOBA,
25 Military Operations in a Built-up Area. But whatever, first you have to define it. What is
26 a city? What is a village? Does it have a particular characteristics? Was it built on
27 population? Area size? Density and height of the buildings? So, it kind of divided the
28 world into three kinds, the village; if you can imagine a village. A little small town and
29 then the big cities. Sort of like the size of LA or New York. It became very rapidly clear
30 that to fight in some places as big as Los Angeles or somewhere on the continent of
31 Europe against the Soviets in Germany, was really tough for infantry units in terms of

1 casualties, commitment. Entire regiments could be gobbled up within a couple of blocks.
2 There was shock, shock warfare. Keep it in mind, the strongest card in the US Marine
3 Corps inventory has always been aviation because we're a combined arms team and you
4 could bring aviation to bear. But how, when you were in a major urban context, did you
5 bring aviation to bear? Particularly in cities with skyscrapers. How do you control it?
6 How did you mark the forward lines? How did you deliver ordnance? So, it was
7 becoming clear, unless we figured out how to use aviation in a major urban context, that
8 combined arms team might be denied to the US Marine forces committed in an urban
9 context. Now, looking back on this last Iraqi go around to me the only thing where I think
10 the Marines got a good taste, and hopefully some of these documents from the eighties
11 and nineties might have gotten into their hands was the Battle of Fallujah in Iraq. I mean,
12 that was certainly an urban context. The buildings weren't that high, they were two or
13 three stories, but to put Marines clearing building after building in a Fallujah context, I
14 think there is probably a good example for anybody who has issued the study of urban
15 warfare early on and practiced some of the techniques had a better chance of success.
16 Give you an example, we found out during a study that we had lost the ability to move
17 through walls. Now, a Marine with a full pack on his back, the golden rule with urban
18 warfare was, "He who goes in the streets gets killed." How do you stay off the streets and
19 still maneuver? How do you go cross compartment? That is, through walls of buildings?
20 Like residential hedge rows or downtowns that are stores. So, the idea of having what
21 was called in World War II, a mouse trap. Where you could put it up against the wall like
22 a hand grenade on a stationary strip and then pull it and then create a wall probably six
23 feet high and three feet wide so that a fully armed Marine could move cross compartment
24 through walls through use of grenade type device. These were the kinds of equipment
25 that we were looking at that fell out from the studies. Because we found some gaps in
26 these studies in the equipment inventory. So being part of the development center and
27 being able to recommend to General Gray and General Kelley, these are the types of
28 equipment, specialized equipment that the Marine Corps may need if committed to a
29 conflict in a major urban area. So, to identify not potentially where we were going to
30 fight, but rather in a sort of generic urban context what would were the forms of
31 equipment that was unique that were special to urban warfare context and what were they

1 and how could we get our hands on them? No less, what would that cost? And was the
2 cost exorbitant? For example, how to use tanks. Tanks, usually in the Marine Corps, are
3 led by infantry. Tanks were never in the front when moving cross country. The tanks are
4 always a bit back and the infantry, they used the tanks. Tanks, by the way, have armor on
5 three sides, but what about the top of the tanks? The Russian tops of their tanks were not
6 very heavily armored. And so that's where they were the most vulnerable. Particularly in
7 an urban context. So how to employ artillery, not on the tanks, in an urban context?
8 That's some unique and constraining aspects. So anyway, it was very refreshing. We
9 pulled this together for years to be able to study a unique, not form of warfare, but a
10 warfare environment that when you looked at the world, it was clear that in the Marine
11 Corps, in the days ahead and to this day, has to be concerned about being committed into
12 an urban context whether it's a small town all the way to major metropolitan issues.
13 Which also gave rise to the question, "How many big cities are there in the world?" And
14 we picked a number with over three hundred thousand people. It's an interesting number.
15 No less, how many of them have subways and how do you make use of fighting
16 underground to use those subways? All these fascinating, some real, some imagined
17 questions came into being in the conduct of that study.

18 KC: Now, this sounds like it was incredibly fascinating and rewarding for you,
19 but it was completely separate from what you've been studying there and you're
20 obviously an expert on the Chinese language.

21 CD: Yeah, that's typical Marine Corps.

22 KC: Was it disappointing?

23 CD: To a degree, but the beauty of it is, language is, unless you work at them, you
24 can lose them. But with that year on Taiwan six hours a day and the level of scholastic
25 achievement required, I sort of had a free ride of indelible for at least a decade. I worked
26 at it, too. Also, from 1976 to 1980, to stay out of trouble on liberty and Washington, D.C.,
27 I went to graduate school at night. So, I used my G.I Bill. So, I was a major by day
28 chasing urban warfare and at night I was a student at George Washington University.

29 KC: What did you study there at George Washington?

30 CD: Asian history. The language plus my now love of Asia having spent what I
31 thought in my short lifetime, a large force of Asia, I had a lot of historical questions on

1 how things got to be. Also, I was fascinated with Chinese communism. Now, as you
2 know, academically in the Washington, D.C., area, it was certain that universities were
3 known for certain things. So, there's a consortium approach. Where if you wanted to
4 study Japan that was common knowledge at that time that you based the core of your
5 studies at Georgetown. If you wanted to study international strategy, you would go to
6 Johns Hopkins. If you wanted to study China, the best and most recognized institution in
7 the greater D.C. area was the George Washington University. I went to school there two
8 or three nights a week and I commuted, oh, maybe a hundred miles round trip three
9 nights a week. So, I would get off work, and I had classes from seven o'clock on through
10 eleven three nights a week. I found the George Washington University very
11 accommodating and professional. There were two other universities I applied to in the
12 Washington—unnamed where it was very regimented, not understanding, and basically
13 anti-military. So even though they were well known, I didn't want anything to do with
14 them. Whereas George Washington knew me as someone who spent a lot of time in Asia.
15 I could be helpful for the other students. I was probably a little older than a graduate
16 student. So, I was able to study international relations with an emphasis on Asia,
17 particularly on China. I also, having gotten a masters in international relations, I went on
18 toward a doctorate degree in modern Asian history. I reached a point by 1979, I was ABD
19 (all but dissertation). But then in '79, the Marine Corps sent me back into school. They
20 sent me to Command and Staff College during the day, and I was able to finish up
21 graduate school at night. I went to the Command and Staff College and graduated in 1980
22 and also, George Washington University was really good to me and they said, "Look, the
23 clock is ticking. We'll give you five years and up to seven years to finish your
24 dissertation and send it in by mail and we'll work it out through correspondence and so
25 on." So, then I received orders in 1980 to take my brand-new family, I got married that
26 year, too, with stepchildren and went over to Hong Kong as the assistant naval attaché.

27 KC: So, were you ever able to finish the dissertation at George Washington?

28 CD: No, regrettably. What happened, I was assigned accompanied to Hong Kong
29 for a year and a half. But the billet that the Marine Corps had put me in there as the
30 assistant naval attaché, it had nothing to do with China. Which was a sole disappointment
31 for me. I protested vehemently to Headquarters Marine Corps that what happened at the

1 billet that I was assigned was really a collection of hand-me-downs and non-essential
2 things. It was no place for a Marine officer. It could have been handled by a Navy officer.
3 I mean, there were officers there, but the nature of the billet was not commensurate with
4 the training that I had received as a foreign area specialist with the Army and my
5 graduate studies. Now, remember the attaché worked with the Defense Intelligence
6 Agency, the DIA. So, I also knew that this time we had just opened the embassy in
7 Beijing. So, working with the DIA and some of the excellent officers that were stationed
8 at Beijing, were able to transfer me. I had to send my family back home and off I went on
9 another unaccompanied tour. I had been married only six months. For an eighteen-month
10 tour in China, unaccompanied. But my wife could come visit. She went home from Hong
11 Kong back to California, but I went directly from Hong Kong with my suitcase up to
12 Beijing to be an assistant naval attaché. The first Marine officer assigned to Beijing in
13 probably, let's see, oh, probably in forty years. The last Marine attaché was in 1949.

14 KC: That's quite an honor. You must have felt pretty good about that.

15 DC: Well, yeah, I think it was the function of I had the credentials as an Army
16 graduate as a foreign area specialist. I knew the defense attaché in China was an Air
17 Force brigadier. A fellow named General Bill Webb, I knew the Army attachés through
18 the Army network. I had the credentials, and I knew many of the people, so it was an
19 easy fit for me. Plus, I didn't have the encumbrances of the family. So, I was one of the
20 original ones that helped get the attaché office up and running in China in 1981.

21 KC: I'm trying to look through some of the information that you sent me. You
22 have been retired since July of 1989.

23 DC: Could you say that again? I missed that.

24 KC: I was looking at your paperwork that you provided to me here and I was
25 trying to find your retirement. You retired in July of 1989. You left the Marine Corps in
26 July 1989. You retired as a full bird colonel at that point.

27 DC: Yes.

28 KC: All right, now, as you look back on this Marine Corps experience, I mean
29 this has been your life since, what, 1964 or 1965 when you entered the Marine Corps.
30 Through all these tours in Vietnam and all the schooling and all the things you were able
31 to do in Taiwan, in the United States and the handbook of urban warfare. As you look

1 back on it, what was your proudest moment? What was the thing that you looked back on
2 and say, “This was the best thing I did in the Corps.”

3 CD: Thank you, I had to hesitate because thanks solely to the Marine Corps, I got
4 to participate in and contribute to many, many things. I think, perhaps, that this is ironic.
5 Outside of the warfare context, the greatest thing I was able to do happened later. It
6 happened in 1986 and ‘87.

7 KC: Tell me about that.

8 CD: I was selected to be the commanding officer of the Marine Corps Security
9 Guard Battalion based in Quantico, Virginia. This unit is responsible for the security, at
10 that time, 143 embassies and consulates worldwide.

11 KC: Where were you based out of?

12 CD: In Quantico, Virginia.

13 KC: Okay, based out of Quantico.

14 CD: Right, I had just been a graduate of the National War College in 1984, was
15 sent to the 2nd Marine Division as the G-2. Again, working for General Gray. General
16 Gray, thereafter, by ‘86, ‘87 was selected to commandant. However, coming from the 2nd
17 Marine Division to resume command of the Marine Security Battalion. I took the flag
18 from a fellow who later went on named Boomer, Walter Boomer. Boomer had just been
19 selected for brigadier. He later on went on to be the assistant commandant and was the
20 hero of the First Gulf War. I had that battalion no more than three months when a hand
21 grenade went off. It was called the Lonetree Affair with the Moscow embassy scandal.
22 Now, there was a Marine of American Indian descent whom I never met named Clayton
23 Lonetree who was accused of espionage and cohesion with a Russian girlfriend. It was all
24 over the American newspapers. There was a time in my life when that occurred that every
25 night on the daily news, I was in first place, and the Pope was in second place. That was
26 not a place to be, out in front of the Pope. This was like a massive explosion inside the
27 Marine Corps. And who was responsible? The Marine Corps was on the face of *Time*
28 magazine. I remember a Marine with a black eye. So, it was a very cataclysmic event for
29 the Marine Corps. I thought back because what it involved was getting together with the
30 Department of State. You see, this embassy thing, we had sixteen hundred Marines with
31 all these embassies and consulates. These are young Marines who are not married, pretty

1 smart kids all with a high GCT (General Classification Test). The State Department had
2 the right security officer at the embassy, and we sent the right staff NCOs to look after
3 these Marine detachments anywhere from five to thirty-five Marines. Some of the bigger
4 embassies like London, Paris, Rome had thirty, thirty-five Marines there. But the smaller
5 posts—and you need at least six Marines to run a post one. That is, the initial entry
6 security at a consulate. So, we had these detachments all over the world divided into five
7 companies. There was one in Panama that looked over all of South America. One in
8 Nairobi that looked over most of Africa. One in Europe that looked over all of Europe.
9 One in Manila that looked over most of Asia. So, working through five officers, usually
10 majors. I wanted lieutenant colonels in those billets. Our role was to equip, train, and
11 provide caliber Marines of any MOS for a security role in a thirty-six-month tour of duty.
12 You would go eighteen months in a relatively hard place, difficult and challenging
13 assignment in some interesting parts of the world to a part of the world in the second tour
14 which may have been a little better. Inversely, if you had a softer tour, the first eighteen
15 months it was going to a place which was a lot tougher than the second. So, sitting on top
16 of this empire and leading it through five lieutenant colonels and a very heavy staff NCO
17 because the officers were all detachments worldwide. You had to deal with the
18 Department of State on a daily basis. To answer your question, I felt the most qualified
19 thanks to the Marine Corps training in other dimensions, particularly Chinese language
20 and attaché duty to understand the Department of State, Its mindset, its weaknesses, how
21 it treated people, and how to deal with them. Frankly for me, dealing with State is dealing
22 with Jell-O. How do you get your arms around Jell-O and get Jell-O to do the right thing
23 and move in the right direction without damaging it completely and wrecking any kind of
24 a rapport which is absolutely necessary? I was given those skills on earlier tours in Hong
25 Kong, Beijing, and on Taichung, Taiwan. Incidentally, many people in State now that I
26 had kept up with, a lot of my contemporaries from Taichung were moving up through the
27 ranks as deputy chief of mission and moving toward ambassadorships. In fact, the guy I
28 worked for in Beijing was Chas Freeman. A Foreign Service officer who I felt the best
29 Chinese linguist the United States ever had. A brilliant man who, again, politically he
30 was—you know, the State Department is Republican or Democrat, but Chas was the best
31 we had in Asia and at a very young age, he was the number two-man, deputy chief of

1 mission in Beijing. The next time we saw Chas was in 1991, was during the first Gulf
2 War where he's the ambassador to Saudi Arabia and did a good job. In fact, he's the one
3 that wanted us to bring Schwarzkopf in and tell him how we're doing business in the
4 region. I mean, everybody gives a lot of credit to General Schwarzkopf, but he had to
5 report to somebody, and Chas Freeman was the ambassador to Saudi Arabia who fully
6 understood the limits and the blessings of power. He was able to be most helpful to our
7 cause and winning the first Gulf War which, to me, was the most lopsided military
8 victory since the Peloponnesian Wars. Anyhow, getting back to MSG (Marine Security
9 Guard) and all the postings I had looking back where my skills and experience and the
10 challenge absolutely met was the ability to during a very tough time for the Marine
11 Corps. This crisis in Moscow shook the Marine Corps to its roots in terms of what is to
12 be done, who is to blame, how do we fix this? Did the Marine Corps pull out of this
13 embassy business completely? These were all under review. I reached the point where if I
14 wasn't up in front of some general five times a day, I was not having a good day. The
15 good news was that the secretary of state at that time was George Shultz and George
16 Shultz had been a Marine officer in World War II. So, he had a compassion and a
17 heritage as a proud Marine quietly at one side. So, George Shultz tried to keep it all in
18 proportions and prevent hysteria through the State Department who was all finger points
19 and, "The Marine Corps, it's their fault." And on and on. There were seventeen different
20 investigations at different levels by different agencies. There was one, for example—by
21 the way, at the time this starts, the commandant is General PX Kelley, who had just—
22 he's about to close out his tenure as commandant. I walk in and say, "We got a problem."
23 Of course, then after General Kelley was General Gray. So, I had the luxury of knowing
24 the commandant on a personal basis and his strong points and his brilliance. So, having
25 General Gray and his assistant commandant of the Marine Corps General Tom Morgan, a
26 brilliant man. I used to go to General Morgan. I said, "Look, my phone rings. I get eighty
27 odd generals around the Marine Corps for all our logistics calling me everyday about this
28 MSG thing. How about keeping all your generals? They all work through you, and every
29 day I talk to you, General Morgan, and that way we can work our way through this
30 thing." And he agreed with that. So General Morgan and General Gray, I was blessed to
31 have those two understanding men on our side of the fence. No less in the background,

1 the Secretary of State himself showed it. So that over the course of all of 1987, we were
2 able to work through this very sticky and thorny issues. I remember the FBI was in on
3 this and NCIS on NSA there were seventeen different investigations on what was called
4 the Moscow Incident. It resulted in Ronald Regan, because when I finally got to Moscow,
5 I hadn't been to Moscow yet. The entire brand-new US embassy was built with Russian
6 labor, and I screamed bloody murder. I said, "This can't be. This building is full of bugs
7 and spooks." Why would we use Russian labor on that building? Especially on some of
8 the secure, compartmented areas? It resulted in that American Embassy. It's probably still
9 there, but there's a pink elephant just sitting there. George Shultz agreed. We had to
10 abandon a building that was just completed as the new American embassy in Moscow.
11 So, this gave rise to a whole new dimension of the construction of US embassies on
12 foreign territories and some with security precautions that had to be taken. General
13 awareness, a specific use of certain contractors and security forces. So, 1987 for me was
14 the last thing I expected to pull this together. To be able to be at that spot and command
15 of the unit. That was ground zero during a very tough page in Marine Corps history and
16 to be able to personally navigate that unit through those rough and pretty perilous waters
17 and get the Marine Corps somewhat unscathed through that process and to find the
18 culprits and put this behind us and keep up the morale of that unit. I thought it was the
19 juncture of all my training against, probably, ironically, a challenge that I could have
20 expected or could have foreseen that was in a non-military context that was, I thought,
21 helpful to the Marine Corps.

22 KC: In 1989, the Berlin Wall goes down. The Cold War, for all intents and
23 purposes, is over. What were your recollections of this? You'd just retired from the
24 Marine Corps, and you've done all this overseas duty. The Cold War was the backdrop of
25 your entire professional career. What was your opinion and what did you think about this
26 when it occurred?

27 CD: I would offer two things. I decided by 1989 to retire because I had made my
28 contribution and I had a wonderful career with a lot of lucky good breaks and a lot of
29 talented people. I could see no war on the horizon. In '89 I could not see the Gulf War in
30 '91. So, I thought—I mean, if I knew, in recollection today, it was my remembrance that
31 if there was a war on the horizon, I probably would have stayed for one more tour, but it

1 wasn't there. It was time to get on with life. I had a family, and it was time to look after
2 them. So, I decided to retire. That's part one. Part two, how do I best explain this? Part
3 two is when I did get to Moscow back in '86,'87 and, rather '87,'88. The first time I was
4 in Leningrad, I realized that the main highway between Leningrad and Moscow was a
5 two-lane highway. Can you believe that? I said, "Two lanes?" And then I realized and I
6 did some studies of the Soviet Union, and I had known some Chinese communism. If you
7 want to understand Chinese communism you've got to understand what's going on in the
8 Soviet Union in the 1920s, 30s, and 40s. That the Soviet Union was not ten feet tall. That
9 the Soviet Union only had one eighth, for example, of the railroad track that we had. I
10 realized that the Soviet Union was a giant façade. When I saw the quality of life in
11 Leningrad and Moscow and how their idea of controlling ice in the winter was to put out
12 a battalion of old ladies in their babushka kerchief with ice chips chipping the streets.
13 That was their idea of control of ice in an urban context. I realized that it's just a matter
14 of time. I knew that the Soviet Union by late '87, I knew that the Soviet Union had its
15 problems and that it was a false façade that would crumble within. I had had the luxury,
16 thanks to the Marine Security Guard Battalion, to have traveled, also, to one of these then
17 Soviet countries from Hungary, East Germany, Finland, Poland, and Czechoslovakia.
18 Having been to all those countries, I could see and understand the hatred of those
19 indigenous people for the Soviet system, what it meant to be occupied. And to be able to
20 travel through that environment, I realized earlier by '87, that the Soviet Union was just a
21 matter of time. I thought it would crumble because of internal reasons. I didn't realize
22 that maybe later on due to the Reagan policies and our ability to outspend them,
23 contributed to accelerated to the demise of the Soviet Union. I thought the passing of the
24 Soviet Union would have been more bloody, sort of ala Hungary or Czechoslovakia
25 in '56, but that it imploded from within and had some pretty enlightened people, like
26 Gorbachev, who guided it through a tough transition without these necessary and
27 revolutionary explosions that would accompany the collapse of the Soviet system. It went
28 a lot more peaceful than I thought. But by '89, when I looked at the Berlin Wall, I
29 realized this was the sign, this was the start of the dominoes, but I don't think the
30 dominoes were going to go as fast as they did. So those were the kind of things running
31 through my mind when I saw the demolition of the Berlin Wall. Having been to Berlin,

1 for US Marines to get to Berlin, not many have that experience, but I've been there a
2 number of times based on urban warfare studies and also the Marine Security Guard
3 Battalion because I had an office and a company located in Frankfurt, so I'd come
4 through Berlin a lot.

5 KC: Let me take you back to Vietnam or a Vietnam topic, here, as we begin to
6 wrap up the interview here, Colonel. All the time that you spent in Vietnam, what did you
7 find to be the most rewarding aspect of your service there?

8 CD: The most rewarding aspect of service?

9 KC: In Vietnam.

10 CD: Well, to me the Vietnam experience came in three dimensions. One was in
11 the reconnaissance business, two was in the junk business, and three was in the advisory
12 business. I saw all of them equally rewarding, unique, but perhaps the reconnaissance
13 business and the advisory business, because of my peers, that the people I met in '65 and
14 early '66 and the people, particularly the advisory people in '70, would go onto be the
15 senior people in the Marine Corps. To have knowledge of them and their habits, the way
16 you do in business in the battlefield context. And then see them contributing a decade
17 later at higher levels of lieutenant colonel and general officer in the Marine Corps. It was
18 very rewarding. I sort of moved around as sort of a graduate in my class. My class with
19 the Vietnamese Marines was '70 to '71. So, to see many of those officers go onto great
20 success and having known them at a greater age and seeing them continuing to
21 contribute, I found personally very rewarding.

22 KC: Yeah, it was a very impressive group of Marine officers who served as
23 advisors to the South Vietnamese in terms of decorations, honors, awards, as well as
24 those who moved onto the upper echelons or just general officers. An astounding number
25 of famous Marines who did that.

26 CD: Remember I had said to you that once in my Chinese studies, found a picture
27 of the Marine barracks in Beijing about 1936. In that picture of about thirty officers in
28 three rows, you know, one sitting and one kneeling and one standing. Those thirty or so
29 officers, I can pick out eighteen or so general officers who later went onto become
30 generals. So, in a way remember that picture and how comradery and friendships tend to
31 move together in the mainstream later. Not that they help each other, but they move along

1 at that pace. Extricating from that picture of eighteen of thirty general officers in the
2 Marine Corps, the first thing, “Oh, there must have been a clique that these officers
3 supported each other and they all moved together successfully through general officer
4 ship.” No, it was something else, but I felt that the Vietnamese Marine advisory unit,
5 maybe because of the level and the caliber of people that participated that I met, that they,
6 as a small group all did very well at the Marine Corps. Was that a clique? No, but it was a
7 shared common experience that each took away from that experience. Something special
8 that later got to contribute to the US Marine Corps. So for many of the people, during my
9 snapshot time there—and there were advisors before me and there were some after that
10 they all kept together and did very well for the Marine Corps as a group. I found that
11 very, very unique.

12 KC: Okay, let me ask you about the most challenging thing about your service in
13 Vietnam. As you look back on it forty-some odd years later, what did you find to be the
14 most challenging aspect of your Vietnam service?

15 CD: The most challenging aspects, I found on the Vietnam War was trying to
16 educate my peers on the greater Asian canvas on what is going on. Again, many of them
17 thought that the Vietnamese were just black pajamas or water buffalo out there on a rice
18 paddy somewhere. Probably greater than ninety percent of the Marine Corps served in
19 only I Corps and that was their experience with the Vietnamese people. It was in a non-
20 urban context, very rural, and that these people in black pajamas for the most part were
21 either VC or the enemy. Of course, the NVA somewhat had uniforms. But I had the
22 benefit and the privilege of serving in other parts of Asia having had the language,
23 Chinese language which just underpins the entire Vietnamese society in terms of the
24 history, their legal structure, and their language. So I had a better grasp or appreciation of
25 Vietnam and also the politics of Asia and how it spilled into Vietnam. Again, historically
26 and the relationship of trying to tune North Vietnam at the time and trying to intonate that
27 and explain that to my colleagues who all good officers who didn’t have the time, the
28 intonation, or the advantages that I had for trying to share my knowledge without being
29 tutorial or snooty. There was a lot more going on here that met the eye politically and as
30 far as what the outcome would eventually be. I found that to be an intellectual challenge.

1 KC: What do you think you learned most about yourself as a result of your
2 Vietnam experiences?

3 CD: The question is, what did I learn about myself because of the Vietnam
4 experience?

5 KC: Yes, sir.

6 CD: I learned leadership firsthand. I had some great instructors. You know, as a
7 young Marine officer, you can be the most motivated, but if you don't run it to a leader
8 who's not up to the standards that you would appreciate or come to respect and then you
9 run into two of them in a row, you're out of there. You'll never stay in the Marines. If
10 you're lucky and you meet a super player at the beginning, when you start to do meet
11 ones and they're not the finest apples in the barrel. You say, "Oh, this guy's just an
12 aberration because I've already met some of the best. So, I was most fortunate early on to
13 meet some terrific senior officers at the rank of captain and major, lieutenants. I was
14 trained by some of the best, I learned their leadership. A young Marine would go
15 anywhere you tell them if you step in front of them. I learned about integrity, and
16 integrity is doing what you're supposed to do when nobody's looking. I consider that the
17 three cornerstones of a superior Marine officer. And those cornerstones are maturity,
18 integrity, and judgment. So, to be early on, cast in a situation, the officers who were
19 looking after my destiny and future, and that I was following, demonstrated on a daily
20 basis maturity, integrity, and judgment, for me, became my yardstick as I went forward.
21 My lens which I judged everything else. So, all those who worked for me reported to me,
22 I would judge the three basic elements of their maturity, their integrity, and their
23 judgment and then their professional skills. So that was, in '65, that was instituted into
24 me at a very early age. I was only twenty-one. That helped me in long stead. For me, let's
25 see, by the time I was—I'm starting to think when I went to AWS. I was twenty-eight
26 years old, and I had almost three tours in Vietnam. So unwittingly and unknowingly that
27 was the standard, but there had been a lot of action packed into the first decade of my
28 Marine Corps career. I was selected to captain at a very early age. So, I got to do a lot of
29 exciting things up front at an early age, but all of those were wrapped in and around
30 maturity, integrity, and judgments. That was sort of like my beacon light when things got
31 foggy, or when the Marine Corps got foggy. Later in 1987 with the Marine Security

1 Guard scandal at the Moscow embassy or the Moscow Affair. There are a lot of books
2 written about that. Those, again, became my steadfast unbreakable guides to which I got
3 to a lot of challenging and shifty times of maturity, integrity, and judgment. It's
4 unshakable. To this day, even when I went on, I got out of the Marines on a Friday,
5 bought a comb, and went to work for Boeing on Monday. Now I'm in a situation where
6 I'm in a huge civilian institution. Of course, my only yardstick of measurement was the
7 Marine Corps. So, to be in the whole Boeing under that lens or under that microscope in
8 terms of what I perceived as integrity and judgment, and how much of that carried over
9 into the civilian world. All their companies out there that are close to the Marine Corps in
10 upholding honesty, integrity, maturity, and all sorts of things and or do they just pay lip
11 service. I found Boeing to be a very civilian to practice many of those morals. It had a
12 good moral fiber to it and I liked that. The transition to me was painless and I was able to
13 contribute in Boeing. It all goes back to those three principles really were chiseled into
14 cement for me probably in the '65 timeframe of integrity and judgment.

15 KC: What were your recollections of the fall of Saigon in April of 1975? How did
16 that affect you?

17 CD: That's a good story. Remember where I am. I'm standing in Taichung,
18 Taiwan. It's a pretty big city, probably almost a half a million people. Right outside
19 Taichung, Taiwan is CCK, it's a Chinese name for Chiang Kai-Shek's second eldest son,
20 Chiang Ching-kuo who was later the president of China. Well, the air base, which is the
21 home of many of the B-52s, the Chinese had given us overflights and landing lights. So
22 many of the B-52s used in Vietnam not only came from Guam, but they came from CCK.
23 You could have been from the forty or fifty B-52s of the CCK. Okay, the CCK also is a
24 logistics depot for aircraft from Air America, the CIA airline. So, I happened to be,
25 during that week, walking down the street in Taichung and following what is going on in
26 Vietnam. I see some beautiful Vietnamese women walking down the streets with their ao
27 dai, A-O D-A-I or pronounced in the north, ausai. These women in a traditional
28 Vietnamese dress walking the streets of Taichung. And so, I stop my car in absolute
29 disbelief and so on. What has happened? They're off on liberty and they're allowed off of
30 the base to go into town. This is the initial wave of the Vietnamese who were fleeing
31 Saigon. Many of them come through Taiwan. And remember the president of South

1 Vietnam at that time, he comes to Taiwan. He comes through CCK airfield, quite close to
2 the city I'm studying in '74, at Thieu, T-H-I-E-U. Thieu is in Taiwan, the first week after
3 the fall of Saigon. He is being hosted by the Chinese authorities in Taipei. So, for me, I'm
4 reading about this in the newspaper and the absolute collapse of South Vietnamese
5 forces. I'm shaking my head, "How can that happen?" That week when they're falling
6 back from the DMZ, the general fallback and withdrawal. Then the mass evacuations to
7 the sea. Remember, at that time, ironically the 4th Marines are embarked on US Navy
8 shipping off of Saigon and the CO of the 4th Marines at that time is Al Gray. Good, old
9 Colonel Al Gray. So, I have colleagues in the 4th Marines, I'm following the somehow
10 miraculous deal that was cut by the NVA that they would not use surface to air missiles
11 against Marine helicopters. For about a thirty-six-hour period, the Marine (unintelligible)
12 and the helicopters with the 4th Marines embark on naval shipping off the coast of Vung
13 Tau which is the point city down from Saigon about thirty miles. So, the Marines
14 evacuate people off the roof and off the streets of the US embassy and other locations in
15 and around Saigon, all these Marine helicopters are flying at east-west axis of about sixty
16 miles and the NVA that was a deal cut where they would not fire on their helicopters. So,
17 the United States is able to successfully evacuate quite a few people to the sea. Again,
18 another instance of amphibious power that no other service could do, but it is very
19 successful. Now, in that three-day period where that evacuation takes place, there are
20 stories of other colleges. Remember, the last two Marines killed in Vietnam were both
21 Marine security guards. There were two new people in country who were sent by the
22 detachment command of the US embassy in Saigon out to Tan Son Nhut Air Base to help
23 with some relief project during the fall of Saigon. That was the last two US Marine
24 casualties, ironically, were Marine security guards. Also, the CO of Company B, Marine
25 Security Battalion, Major Jimmy Kean, he's now deceased. He died about five years ago.
26 Major Kean is sort of built as the last man out of Saigon. If you're familiar with the story,
27 all the people leaving on the roof are the US Embassy in Saigon. All of a sudden, the
28 Marines helicopter moving people off of the building all the way down to the sea stops
29 and the last two men is Major Kean and a colleague spend the night in the radar dish on
30 top of the roof of the US embassy. Nobody knows they're there and the NVA ransacked
31 the palace underneath them and the embassy. Only 'til the next day where a helicopter

1 comes in is successfully extricate then captain, but Major Jim Keen as the last man out of
2 Saigon. I'm aware of these stories in Taiwan and it is made bitterly clear to me what is
3 happening as the elite hierarchy of the presidential family and some of his probably
4 cabinet postmen in their families are walking down the streets of Taichung where I'm
5 going to school in 1974.

6 KC: What are your personal feelings about the collapse of the Saigon military and
7 the Saigon government?

8 CD: I think two-fold. The first is, I have immediate compassion and absolute
9 bedrock belief that the South Vietnamese Marines are not part of the problem. They will
10 do everything they can to preserve their country. Their bravery after many years of
11 fighting of the people that I had met, these are patriots who had the communists and will
12 fight to the death. So, I concern myself about how are they doing and where they are. Are
13 they trapped somewhere in this major collapse? My second thoughts revolve around; this
14 sounds like interior intrigue. This sounds like somebody in I Corps may have gone over.
15 I'm just guessing, this is my sensing now. As I'm walking around Taiwan I choose to
16 develop the theory that maybe somebody in I Corps, some senior officer of the South
17 Vietnamese government opened the back door and maybe withdrew units from I Corps or
18 from strategic positions to allow the North Vietnamese to port through and circumvent
19 and flank all the key positions in I Corps. Then a day or two later I am in absolute
20 disbelief and stunned that somebody in Saigon orders a general withdrawal from I Corps
21 and II Corps and now you have an implosion of Vietnamese units either in their orderly
22 or disorderly way of fleeing and making their way South either by boat and they're
23 commandeering boats or ships trying to escape. I'm absolute disbelief. Keep it in mind
24 now, in '72, the Easter Offensive has almost occurred and thank again that the South
25 Vietnamese Marines were at the bridge. Colonel Jerry (Gerald) Turley has written a great
26 book called the *Easter Offensive*. They do a great deal to prevent a mass invasion across
27 the DMZ in 1972. I choose to believe that between '72 and '74 that the Vietnamese
28 government had realized the errors of those ways and worked to ensure that that did not
29 happen again, another Easter Offensive. But, by the spring of '74 in June, it is happening
30 again. So, I'm in disbelief, I'm in shock, I'm a little bitter. I know somebody is
31 responsible and I believe somebody panicked in the South Vietnamese military hierarchy

1 and ordered a major withdrawal that was not planned. To do it right, a withdrawal is a
2 very, very difficult, sophisticated, and challenging military operation. That they start to
3 crumble and move back. I worry that the Vietnamese Marines were up in I Corps, that
4 they get out, and are able to get back behind some imaginary line halfway across the
5 country that somebody hopefully is planning to be able to rally upon a set of positions as
6 a redoubt to stop the flow of this onslaught of North Vietnamese forces on mechanized
7 forces heading south toward Saigon. But my hopes were dashed because that is such a
8 major undertaking requiring tremendous coordination and timing which was not there
9 most of the time available to erect the fallback positions behind some parallel line
10 midway across South Vietnam.

11 KC: I've got two more questions for you, Colonel.

12 CD: Oh, and I realized it's all over when my Chinese friends in Taipei call me up
13 and say, "Guess who's walking around up here in Taipei?" When I realized President
14 Thieu has fled the country. So now you have what I choose to call a *deus ex machina*,
15 you had a government without a head. The head has personally fled. You can't expect
16 to—again, troops will follow you everywhere. You lead them if you're one step in front.
17 If you leave the country, I know it's going to be a bloodbath, and I just say a prayer for
18 the Vietnamese. There's the good Vietnamese people who are going to have a long, tough
19 time ahead of them.

20 KC: Right, now I've got just two more questions for you, Colonel. One is, as you
21 look back on everything that was Vietnam, looking back at the Vietnam War, what do
22 you think the most important lessons for the war were for the United States? What are the
23 most important lessons of the Vietnam War?

24 CD: Okay, that's a very timely and good question I should have thought about
25 that. My sensing tells me that the lessons for the United States is one that most Asians
26 know. And again, I perceive much of my thinking from Sun Tzu and Confucius and so
27 on. While the American success on the battlefield for two hundred years is absolutely
28 brilliant, our biggest military and short coming is political will. Knowing Asia—by the
29 early eighties to have a handle on Asia and to be able to speak with authority on that
30 subject. That in Asia, the United States is just still in kindergarten. In appreciation of
31 what constitutes political will. When you study the life of Ho Chi Minh and how long he

1 was at it and how many setbacks. I mean, the man was even an elevator operator in
2 Boston. When you look at his battle with the French and then with the Americans, even
3 though I don't subscribe to his philosophy of sorts, but the idea is to study a political will.
4 When they see that the Church Amendment going in in '74 and I realized that the United
5 States had only been engaged in Vietnam. We had advisory efforts in the early 60s, '62.
6 We had been there a decade that we could not develop the political will. The Americans
7 fight like a football game, like we play football. We want a sixty-minute contest, we want
8 a visible score board, we want a clear winner, we want a clear loser, and then we want to
9 go home. That is not the nature of conflict, particularly in Asia. We do not appreciate, nor
10 are we willing to put blood and treasure on the line for a protracted cause. Whether it's
11 noble or not, but whether the United States is not politically, mentally—just like we
12 finished the election this week. Some people in the world say we commit political suicide
13 every four years. But the United States, our greatest drawback, is our inability to think in
14 terms of a protracted conflict. The only two western nations who were pretty good at that,
15 maybe three, is the British, the French, and the Turkish, and the Turks. The British
16 understood in Malaysia with their emergency in Malaysia. What it would take to extricate
17 the Chinese communists, and it would take a decade. The French, when you see Vietnam,
18 you'll see that the French, for what it took, talking about colonialism that the French had
19 made an investment for over a hundred years in Vietnam. Now, when you take the points,
20 I'm trying to make here on protracted warfare, I don't consider the Cold War as
21 protracted warfare. Things went on and so on and we had little skirmishes here and there.
22 We supported proxies fighting in Africa and Eastern Europe and so on. But to be fully
23 engaged as a nation committed to protracted warfare, only comes into the mainstream
24 when you think about Iraq and now Afghanistan. Then today, there's so much finger
25 pointing on Afghanistan, we've been there a year or ten years, we get out, how did this
26 happen? To me, it's all symptomatic like the American way of doing business, like a
27 football game. We did slight, protracted warfare. That's why the Gulf War, number one,
28 was so appealing. I said earlier that it was the most lopsided victory on top of the
29 Peloponnesian War. We went, we conquered three weeks, we had minimal casualties, we
30 got our allies to pay for it, and we all went home under George Bush I. Anyhow, to pull
31 this together my greatest fear is the United States' political will. Right now, and I look

1 ahead at other threats facing the United States and the five-hundred-pound gorilla in the
2 room, again, is China. I choose to believe that we will have some serious confrontation
3 with them. Maybe this is not the time for that. My point is, unless we somehow—and
4 again, recognition is halfway to solution unless we recognize that we devise some sort of
5 political mechanism or prepare our people on the nature of protracted warfare that is as
6 often necessary, hard to measure, hard to gauge, hard to tell who's winning, but political
7 will is the key to any military success. We have some issues there as a nation.

8 KC: All right, now my last question for you, Colonel is—

9 CD: Did that answer it? The whole purpose?

10 KC: Yes, absolutely, absolutely. And I've only got one question for you and it's a
11 pretty broad one so feel free however you see fit. Again, as you look back on the Vietnam
12 War, everything it was and everything that it's been in recent American history, what
13 would you say the greatest legacy of the Vietnam War for the United States? What's the
14 war's legacy?

15 CD: There's two ways to look at that. It's the near-term or the strategic.
16 Strategically, the engagement of the United States bloodied pressure for a decade in
17 Vietnam and then to have such a terrible outcome of withdrawal. There was some
18 positive things that occurred. The first was, I truly believe that Indonesia was saved from
19 the PPK, the Chinese communist uprising there in '65. The presence of the United States
20 in Asia in such vast numbers of power and treasure, did much to stabilize much of
21 Southeast Asia. Even Singapore or Malaysia and even Pakistan and India at the time.
22 Secondly, that the United States, to a degree, learned the natures and the conditions under
23 which we entered the Vietnam War should not happen again. There was not enough
24 introspection. The *Turner Joy* incident, the *Maddox* incident were very shaky grounds.
25 Right up there with "Remember the *Maine*," why we entered the cause of the Spanish-
26 American War. But also, the United States, by our presence in Vietnam, we were very
27 fortunate because much of that war, particularly from '66 to '72, that we did not irritate the
28 Chinese and create another situation analogist for the Korean Peninsula. We were
29 fortunate because the United States ironically did not understand, just a handful of
30 people, what was going on in China and how the Chinese could have been more of a
31 problem for us in Vietnam. But because of the cultural—the great Proletarian Cultural

1 Revolution, the Chinese were fully engaged and self-absorbed in their own internal
2 problems and trying to keep—and Mao Tse Tung was fighting viciously to maintain his
3 regime against other elements within the communist movement. He was fighting for
4 survival. With our inability to see that, we were very lucky. Here we are on the fringes of
5 China again, and China gets very nervous with consulates on their borders. The Chinese
6 could have made it a lot tougher for all of us, but because of their self-contained problem
7 issues, they were self-absorbed and could not spend time giving better aid and comfort to
8 their North Vietnamese allies. And third is, the United States, all during the early sixties,
9 mid-sixties, even up until about 1968, did not see that communism is not monolithic.
10 There are many different communists under that blanket. We could not clearly
11 distinguish at the presidential level. Nowhere in Congress or in our strategic think tanks.
12 It was so simple and later revealed. We were still operating under George Kennan and his
13 containment. We did not realize the tremendous split between the Soviet Union and the
14 communist Chinese. In 1968 they went to war up on the Ussuri River. Our inability as a
15 nation politically, maybe Nixon began to see this. That we could drive a wedge between
16 the Chinese communists and the Soviets. They were not monolithic. They had their own
17 national objective priorities which often clash. We did not take advantage of that and
18 Vietnam, again, is one way we could have done that. In the Vietnam War, we failed to
19 realize the major conflict in the world that was emerging. That we could have done
20 something about politically between the Soviets and the Chinese. Only with the advent of
21 Nixon who realizes that the Chinese, for a price, can become detached monolithically and
22 begin to face west and this resulted in the isolation of the Soviet Union leading to the
23 eventual political and economic collapses.

24 KC: Well, Colonel, is there anything else you would like to add to this interview
25 before we close it up for good?

26 CD: No, sir. I'd just like to say thank you to yourself and the staff at the archives
27 at Texas Tech. This has been a terrific opportunity and conducted in a very professional
28 way with some timely historical questions, and I just feel most fortunate that I was able to
29 participate and contribute my thoughts to the objectives of the archive.

30 KC: Well, it's been my pleasure to spend this time with you, Colonel, and on
31 behalf of the folks here we certainly appreciate your effort.

1 CD: Doctor, forgive me, in a few days I want to get that letter off attesting—